1. ROUTING AND NAT	7
1.1. Understand Packet Flow	8
1.1.1. General Packet Flow	8
1.1.2. Routing priority	9
1.1.3. SNAT Priority	12
1.2. DEFAULT WAN TRUNK AND DEFAULT SNAT	17
1.2.1. Interface Type	17
1.2.2. Default WAN Trunk and default SNAT	21
1.2.2.1. Default WAN Trunk	21
1.2.2.2. Default SNAT	23
1.2.2.3. Using Default WAN Trunk and Default SNAT	23
1.3. SETTING UP VIRTUAL SERVER	25
1.3.1. Network Scenario	25
1.3.2. Configuration steps	26
1.4. SETTING UP ONE TO ONE NAT	
1.4.1. Network Scenario	
1.4.2. Configuration Steps	
1.5. SETTING UP MANY ONE TO ONE NAT	
1.5.1. Application Scenario	
1.5.2. Configuration Steps	
1.6. NAI LOOPBACK	
1.6.1. Network Scenario	
1.0.2. Configuration Steps	
1.7.1 Application Scenario	
1.7.1. Application Scenario	
1.8 POLICY ROUTE VS DIRECT ROUTE	
1.9 ROUTING FOR IPSEC VPN	38
191 Application Scenario	39
1.9.2. Configuration Steps	
1.10. One to One NAT Link Fail Over	41
1.10.1. Network Scenario	41
1.10.2. Configuration Steps	42
1.11. ACCESSING IPSEC VPN PEER SUBNET FROM SSL VPN CLIENTS	44
1.11.1. Application Scenario	44
1.11.2. Configuration Steps	45
1.11.2.1. When Branch is a USG ZyWALL	45
1.11.2.2. When Branch is a ZyNOS ZyWALL	50
2. DEPLOYING EPS	55
2.1. EPS INTRODUCTION	55
2.1.1. EPS WebGUI	
2.1.2. EPS CLI	
2.1.3. EPS Application Note	60
••	1

All contents copyright (c) 2010 ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

2.2. Def	PLOY EPS IN USER AWARE	60
2.2.1.	Application Scenario	60
2.2.2.	Configuration Steps	60
2.2.3.	Scenario Verification	64
2.3. Def	PLOY EPS IN SSL VPN	66
2.3.1.	Application Scenario	66
2.3.2.	Configuration Steps	67
2.3.3.	Scenario Verification	69
2.4. Dei	PLOY AAA AND EPS IN SSL VPN	72
2.4.1.	Application Scenario	72
2.4.2.	Configuration Steps	72
2.4.3.	Scenario Verification	89
3. VOIPA	PPLICATION WITH USG	93
3.1. Vo	IP SUPPORT DEVICE LIST	93
3.2. Vo	IP IN NAT SCENARIO	94
3.2.1.	SIP Server on the Internet	94
3.2.1.	1. Application Scenario	94
3.2.1.	2. Configuration Steps	95
3.2.2.	SIP Server on the Local Network	95
3.2.2.	1. Application Scenario	95
3.2.2.	2. Configuration Steps	96
3.3. Vol	IP IN VPN SCENARIO	97
3.3.1.	Application Scenario	97
3.3.2.	Configuration Steps	98
4. IPSEC	VPN HIGH AVAILABILITY	.109
4.1. Sitt	e-to-Site IPSec VPN HA/Fall Back	.109
4.1.1.	Application Scenario	.109
4.1.2.	Configuration Steps	. 110
4.1.3.	Scenario Verification	.115
4.2. IPS	EC VPN FAIL OVER AND FALL BACK	. 119
4.2.1.	Application Scenario	. 119
4.2.2.	Configuration Steps	.120
4.2.3.	Scenario Verification	.130
FAQ		.135
THE FAO	FROM A TO PARE ZI D V2 12 RELATED. BUT YOU CAN ALSO REFER TO T	HFM
FOR ZLD	$\sqrt{2}$ 20 corresponding outstions	135
A. DEVICE	MANAGEMENT FAO	.135
A01. He	ow can I connect to ZvWALL USG to perform administrator's tasks?	.135
A02. W	hy can't I login into ZvWALL USG?	.135
A03. W	hat's difference between "Admin Service Control" and "User Service	
Control	" configuration in GUI menu System > WWW?	.136
A04. W	hy ZyWALL USG redirects me to the login page when I am performin	ıg

the management tasks in GUI?	137
A05. Why do I lose my configuration setting after ZyWALL USG restarts?	137
A06. How can I do if the system is keeping at booting up stage for a long tim	ne?
	137
B. REGISTRATION FAQ	139
B01. Why do I need to do the Device Registration?	139
B02. Why do I need to activate services?	139
B03. Why can't I active trial service?	139
B04. Will the UTM service registration information be reset once restore	
configuration in ZvWALL USG back to manufactory default?	139
C. FILE MANAGER FAO	140
C01. How can ZyWALL USG manage multiple configuration files?	140
C02. What are the configuration files like startup-config.conf.	
system-default.conf and lastgood.conf?	140
C03. Why can't I update firmware?	140
C04. What is the Shell Scripts for in GUI menu File manager > Shell Scripts	? 141
C05. How to write a shell script?	141
C06 Why can't I run shell script successfully?	141
D. OBJECT FAO	142
D01. Why does ZyWALL USG use object?	
D02 What's the difference between Trunk and the Zone Object?	
D03. What is the difference between the default LDAP and the group LDAP	?
What is the difference between the default RADIUS and the group RADIUS	? 143
E. INTERFACE FAO.	144
E01. How to setup the WAN interface with PPPoE or PPTP?	144
E02. How to add a virtual interface (IP alias)?	144
E03. Why can't I get IP address via DHCP relay?	
E04 Why can't I get DNS options from ZvWALL's DHCP server?	144
E05. Why does the PPP interface dials successfully even its base interface go	bes
down?	144
ROUTING AND NAT FAO	
F01. How to add a policy route?	146
F02. How to configure local loopback in ZvWALL USG?	146
F03. How to configure a NAT?	
F04. After I installed a HTTP proxy server and set a http redirect rule. I still d	can't
access web. Why?	150
F05 How to limit some application (for example, FTP) bandwidth usage?	150
F06 What's the routing order of policy route dynamic route and static route	and
direct connect subnet table?	151
F07 Why ZyWALL USG cannot ping the Internet host but PC from LAN si	de
can browse internet WWW?	
F08 Why can't I ning to the Internet after I shutdown the primary WAN	
interface?	151
F09. Why the virtual server or port trigger does not work?	
=	

F10. Why port trigger does not work?	152
F11. How do I use the traffic redirect feature in ZyWALL USG?	152
F12. Why can't ZyWALL learn the route from RIP and/or OSPF?	152
G. VPN AND CERTIFICATE	153
G01. Why can't the VPN connections dial to a remote gateway?	153
G02. VPN connections are dialed successfully, but the traffic still cannot	go
through the IPsec tunnel	
G03. Why ZyWALL USG VPN tunnel had been configured correctly and	the
VPN connection status is connected but the traffic still can not reach the	emote
VPN subnet?	153
G04 VPN connections are dialed successfully, and the policy route is set	But the
traffic is lost or there is no response from remote site	154
G05 Why don't the Inbound/Outbound traffic NAT in VPN work?	154
H Fibewall $F\Delta O$	155
H01 Why doesn't my I AN to WAN or WAN to I AN rule work?	155
H02. Why does the intra zone blocking melfunction after I disable the fir	
1102. Why does the intra-zone blocking manufaction after 1 disable the fit	zwaii : 155
1102 Can I have access control rules to the device in finance 112	133
HOS. Call I have access control rules to the device in filewall?	133
I. APPLICATION PAIROL FAQ	130
101. What is Application Patrol?	130
102. What applications can the Application Patrol function inspect?	
103. Why does the application patrol fail to drop/reject invalid access for	some
applications?	
104. What is the difference between "Auto" and "Service Ports" settings i	n the
Application Patrol configuration page?	
105. What is the difference between BWM (bandwidth management) in P	olicy
Route and App. Patrol ?	159
I06. Do I have to purchase iCards specifically for using AppPatrol feature	?159
I07. Can I configure different access level based on application for differ	ent users?
	159
I08. Can I migrate AppPatrol policy and bandwidth management control	from
ZLD1.0x to ZLD2.0x?	160
J. IDP FAQ	161
J01. Why doesn't the IDP work? Why has the signature updating failed?.	161
J02. When I use a web browser to configure the IDP, sometimes it will po	pup
"wait data timeout"	161
J03. When I want to configure the packet inspection (signatures), the GU	[
becomes very slow.	161
J04. After I select "Auto Update" for IDP, when will it update the signatu	res?.161
J05. If I want to use IDP service, will it is enough if I just complete the	
registration and turn on IDP?	161
J06. What are the major design differences in IDP in ZLD1.0x and latest	
IDP/ADP in ZLD2.0x?	162
J07. Does IDP subscription have anything to do with AppPatrol?	163

J08. How to get a detailed description of an IDP signature?	163
J09. After an IDP signature updated, does it require ZyWALL to reboot to ma	ake
new signatures take effect?	163
CONTENT FILTER FAQ	165
K01. Why can't I enable external web filtering service? Why does the extern	al
web filtering service seem not to be working?	165
K02. Why can't I use MSN after I enabled content filter and allowed trusted	
websites only?	165
L. DEVICE HA FAQ	166
L01. What does the "Preempt" mean?	166
L02. What is the password in Synchronization?	166
L03. What is "Link Monitor" and how to enable it?	166
L04. Can Link Monitor of Device HA be used in backup VRRP interfaces?	166
L05. Why do both the VRRP interfaces of master ZW USG and backup ZW	USG
are activated at the same time?	167
M. USER MANAGEMENT FAQ	168
M01. What is the difference between user and guest account?	168
M02. What is the "re-authentication time" and "lease time"?	168
M03. Why can't I sign in to the device?	168
M04. Why is the TELNET/SSH/FTP session to the device disconnected? When	iv is
the GUI redirected to login page after I click a button/link?	
M05. What is AAA?	
M06. What are Idap-users and radius-users used for?	169
M07. What privileges will be given for ldap-users and radius-users?	169
N. CENTRALIZED LOG FAO	171
N01. Why can't I enable e-mail server in system log settings?	
N02. After I have the entire required field filled, why can't I receive the log 1	nail?
	171
O. TRAFFIC STATISTICS FAO	172
O01. When I use "Flush Data" in Report, not all the statistic data are cleared.	.172
O02. Why isn't the statistic data of "Report" exact?	
O03. Does Report collect the traffic from/to ZvWALL itself?	
O04. Why cannot I see the connections from/to ZyWALL itself?	
P ANTI-VIRUS FAO	172
P01 Is there any file size or amount of concurrent files limitation with ZvW	ALL
USG Anti-Virus engine?	172
P02 Does ZyWALL USG Anti-Virus support compressed file scanning?	173
P03 What is the maximum concurrent session of ZvWALL USG Anti-Virus	
engine?	173
P04 How many type of viruses can be recognized by the $7_{\rm VWAII}$ USG?	173
P05. How frequent the AV signature will be undated?	173
P06 How to retrieve the virus information in detail?	172
P07 I cannot download a file from Internet through 7xWALL USG because	175 the
Anti-Virus engine considers this file has been infected by the virus: however	I
ind the onshe considers the nus been intered by the virus, nowever	, ⊥

am very sure this file is not infected because the file is nothing but a	a plain text file.
How do I resolve this problem?	174
P08. Does ZyWALL USG Anti-Virus engine support Passive FTP?	174
P09. What kinds of protocol are currently supported on ZyWALL U	SG
Anti-Virus engine?	174
P10. If the Anti-Virus engine detects a virus, what action it may take	e? Can it cure
the file?	174
Q. ZLD v2.20 New Feature Related FAQ	175
Q01. In ZLD v2.20, by default, I don't need to create any policy rou	ite to make
traffic from intranet to go out to internet. How does USG do this?	175
Q02. In ZLD v2.20, when I configure a NAT 1:1 mapping rule, then	e's not the
option of "add corresponding policy route for NAT 1:1 mapping". T	Then how does
the USG achieve the NAT 1:1 mapping?	176
Q03. In ZLD v2.20, do I still need to create policy routes for IPSec	VPN traffic?
	177
Q04. What is EPS?	177
Q05. Where can I deploy the EPS function?	177
Q06. Is IPSec VPN HA fall back function in ZLD v2.20?	178
Q07. I want to add a bridge interface to Device HA. What are the co	orrect setup
steps to prevent broadcast storm?	178
Q08. I upgraded my USG firmware from v2.12 to v2.20. There seen	n to be some
routing issues after the upgrade. I know there're some changes in ro	outing design
in v2.20. How can I solve the routing issues related with firmware u	ıpgrade?179

1. Routing and NAT

USG ZyWALL is usually placed at the company network boarder, acting as company network gateway. Routing and NAT are the indispensable functions of USG ZyWALL, responsible for the routing among intranet networks, as well as comprehensive routing between intranet and internet traffic. Thus, correctly set up routing and NAT are very important for the USG ZyWALL to work properly as your requirements.



In the scenario above, there're various intranet subnets interconnected. The client zone and WLAN zone are connected directly to the USG ZyWALL, server zone and VoIP client subnets are connected to a switch, and the switch is connected to the USG. All the intranet clients and servers need to be able to access internet, with proper settings of routing and SNAT. The intranet servers should be able to be accessed by internet clients, and also should be able to be accessed by the intranet clients. To enable the branch office intranet clients communicate safely with the HQ internet resources and clients, IPSec VPN are built between the HQ USG and branch office security gateway, so correct VPN routing is also necessary. Telecommunicates not only wants to access the HQ resources via SSL VPN, but also wants to access branch office resources via SSL VPN first to the HQ, then is directed to the branch office via IPSec VPN. To achieve this goal, we also need correct routings set on the USG ZyWALL.

1.1. Understand Packet Flow

Before start setting up Routing and NAT on your USG ZyWALL, understanding its packet flow, Routing and NAT priority may help a lot for your correct setting up.

1.1.1.General Packet Flow

Below is the general packet flow in USG ZyWALL. It reflects how the USG ZyWALL processes traffic from the time it enters ZyWALL from one interface, till it leaves ZyWALL from another interface.



For example, USG ZyWALL receives VoIP packet from LAN interface.

- 1. The frames sent through network may be fragmented to meet the MTU settings on each router through the path the traffic goes on network. When the USG receives traffic, it will first defragment the frames.
- 2. The ALG (Application Layer Gateway) will check and alter the application layer information, e.g. Contact information in the SIP message header and SDP information in message body.

ZyXEL

- 3. Then USG will check whether there's DNAT (Destination NAT) rule set, if there is, it will translate the destination address according to the DNAT rule. If there's not, USG will remain the original destination address. Usually from traffic sent from intranet to outside, there's no DNAT rule set.
- 4. The traffic is sent to the routing procedure. USG decide where it should send the traffic to, and via which interface.
- 5. The traffic is sent to the firewall processing stage. If according the firewall rule, the traffic is allowed, USG will allow the traffic to pass, if it's set to Block, the USG will drop the traffic, and generates a log if the firewall rule is set to log.
- 6. The traffic is sent to the ADP processing stage. USG will perform ADP checking according to ADP rules, and ADP signatures. If the traffic is detected as anomaly attack, the USG will block/log the traffic according to the ADP signatures.
- 7. The traffic is sent to the IDP processing stage. USG will perform IDP checking according to IDP rules, and IDP signatures. If the traffic is detected as intrusion attack, the USG will block/log the traffic according to the IDP signatures.
- 8. The traffic is sent to Application Patrol processing stage. USG will check the traffic application layer to determine its class according to relative IDP signatures. If traffic matches some application class, USG will decide how to handle the traffic according to the App Patrol rules.
- 9. Traffic is sent to Content Filtering processing stage if the traffic is web traffic. USG check what action it should take according to Content Filtering rules.
- 10. The traffic is sent to Anti-Virus processing stage. USG will examine the traffic with AV signatures. If virus is detected, it will give corresponding action according to AV setting.
- 11. The traffic is sent to Anti-Spam processing stage if it is mail traffic (SMTP, POP3), then gives corresponding action according to AS settings.
- 12. The traffic is sent to SNAT procedure. USG will map the traffic's source address according to SNAT rules (outgoing interface, customized address, NAT 1:1 address, etc, which is to be discussed later).
- 13. The traffic is sent to Bandwidth Management procedure. USG will allocate bandwidth to the traffic if corresponding BWM rule is set.
- 14. The traffic will be fragmented if the frame is larger than the interface's MTU setting.
- 15. The traffic is finally sent out.

1.1.2.Routing priority

Understanding Routing Priority in USG ZyWALL helps a lot for you to correctly set

up routing rules to fulfill your network scenario requirements. The picture below shows the routing priority in USG ZyWALL. The priorities determine which routing the USG will take according to the traffic's source, destination, and service type.



1. USG directly connected routing takes first priority over all other routings. Take the following scenario as an example.



On the USG ZyWALL, a policy route is set: Incoming interface: LAN1 Source Address: LAN subnet 192.168.1.0/24 Destination Address: Any Service: Any Next Hop: WAN1 (200.0.1.1) SNAT: Outgoing Interface

ZyXEL

USG receives traffic from LAN1, destination is 172.25.27.5, which is in the direct connected subnet of WAN2 172.25.27.3. Direct route takes first priority. So the traffic will be sent out from WAN2, although in the policy route the next hop is WAN1.

2. Policy Route takes the second routing priority.

There's an advanced setting in Policy Route, which is "Use Policy Route to Override Direct Route". This function will enable Policy Route to take priority over Direct Route. For detail, please go to **<u>1.8 Policy Route vs. Direct Route</u>**

3. One to One NAT routing takes third priority.

Different from ZLD v2.1x, One to One NAT routing is generated automatically by system after One to One NAT rule is set in Configuration>Network>NAT. For detailed explanation, please go to section **<u>1.4 Setting up One to One NAT</u>**

4. IPSec VPN routing takes fourth priority.

Different from ZLD v2.1x, routing for IPSec VPN traffic is generated automatically by system. There's no need to add policy routes for IPSec VPN one by one. For detailed explanation, please go to section <u>1.9 Routing for IPSec VPN</u>

5. Static Routes and dynamic routes take fifth priority.

Static routes are manually added by administrator, specifying the next hop for certain destination. Dynamic routes are system dynamically learned routes through routing protocols, such as RIP and OSPF.

6. Default WAN Trunk takes the sixth priority.

From ZLD v2.20, there's a default WAN Trunk for system routing. If no routings in the higher priorities are present in the device, USG can use the Default WAN Trunk to route traffic. Usually the Default WAN Trunk includes all the systems WAN interfaces and ppp interfaces. For detailed explanation, please go to section <u>1.2 Default WAN</u> <u>Trunk and Default SNAT</u>.

7. Routings in system Main route table take last priority in routing.

Main route table generally contains default route learnt from interface default gateway.

For example, in WAN2 interface, the default gateway is 200.0.0.2. If there's not any routings with higher priorities, the USG will use this route: Sending traffic to gateway 200.0.0.2.



Edit Ethernet		(ack
Show Advanced Settings		
nterface Properties		
Interface Type:	external	
Interface Name:	wan2	
Port:	P2	
Zone:	WAN 🗸	
MAC Address:	00:23:F8:10:07:1D	
Description:	(Optional)	
Use Fixed IP Address		
IP Address:	200.0.0.1	
Subnet Mask:	255.255.255.0	
	200.0.0.2 (Optional)	
Gateway:		
Gateway: Metric:	0 (0-15)	
Gateway:	0 (0-15)	
Gateway: Metric: Interface Parameters	0 (0-15)	
Gateway: Metric: nterface Parameters Egress Bandwidth:	0 (0-15) 1048576 Kbps 1	

NOTE: Default gateways in different interfaces also have priorities. They're decided by the interface Metric. The smaller the metric value, the higher the priority is. Thus, metric 0 has the highest priority among all the interface default gateways.

If two or more interfaces are using the same metric value, e.g. 0, the first configured interface gateway will have priority over all other later configured interface gateways with the same metric value.

1.1.3.SNAT Priority

The picture below shows the SNAT priorities in USG ZyWALL. The priorities will determine which SNAT rule the USG ZyWALL will use to map the traffic's original source address.



Policy Route SNAT takes the first priority.
 Usually we will set SNAT for traffic in Polity Route.



You can set SNAT to map the original source address to:

- Outgoing interface
- Customized single address
- Customized group address

Outgoing interface:



Address Translation		
Source Network Address Translation:	outgoing-interface 🗸 🗸	
Port Triggering	none	ve IN Move
	outgoing-interface	
	LAN1_SUBNET	Trigger Service
	LAN2_SUBNET	
Bandwidth Shaping	EXT_WLAN_SUBNET	
Maximum Bandwidth:	DMZ_SUBNET	
Bapdwidth Priority:	WLAN-1-1_SUBNET	rv)
	WAN1_IP	47
Maximize Bandwidth Usage	WAN2_IP	
	SVR	
	web_svr	

Customized single address:

a. Go to Configuration > Object > Address, add one address object with Type as Host.

Addres	Address Group		
Config	uration		
0	Add Z Edit Earnove E Object Reference		
#	Name 🔺	Туре	Address
1	DMZ_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	dmz-192.168.3.0/24
2	EXT_WLAN_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	ext-wlan-10.59.0.0/24
з	LAN1_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	lan1-192.168.1.0/24
4	LAN2_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	lan2-192.168.2.0/24
5	SVR	HOST	192.168.1.33
6	WAN1_IP	HOST	192.168.10.34
7	WAN2_IP	HOST	192.168.20.34
8	WAN_alias	HOST	200.0.0.2

 b. Go to Configuration > Network > Routing, add one policy route, and choose the SNAT as the added address object. The source address will be translated to this address 200.0.0.2.

Address Translation			
	Source Network Address Translation:	WAN_alias	~
1		none	
Ba	andwidth Shaping	outgoing-interface	1.
	Maximum Bandwidth:	LAN1_SUBNET	
		LAN2_SUBNET	
	Bandwidth Priority:	EXT_WLAN_SUBNET	CY)
	🥅 Maximize Bandwidth Usage	DMZ_SUBNET	
		WLAN-1-1_SUBNET	

Customized group address:

a. Go to Configuration > Object > Address, add one address object, with Type as Range.

ZyXEL

Addres	Address Group		
Config	wation		
coning			
	Add 🖉 Edit 🍵 Remove 🔚 Object Reference		
#	Name 🔺	Туре	Address
1	DMZ_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	dmz-192.168.3.0/24
2	EXT_WLAN_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	ext-wlan-10.59.0.0/24
3	LAN1_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	lan1-192.168.1.0/24
4	LAN2_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	lan2-192.168.2.0/24
5	SVR	HOST	192.168.1.33
6	WAN1_IP	HOST	192.168.10.34
7	WAN2_IP	HOST	192.168.20.34
8	VVAN_alias	HOST	200.0.0.2
9	WAN_range	RANGE	200.0.0.2-200.0.0.5

c. Go to Configuration > Network > Routing, add one policy route, and choose the SNAT as the added address object. The source address will be translated to addresses in this range randomly.

Address Translation		
Source Network Address Translation:	WAN_range 🗸 🗸	
	none	
Bandwidth Shaping	outgoing-interface	L
Maximum Bandwidth:	LAN1_SUBNET	
Paraduidhe Duisvituu	LAN2_SUBNET	
Bandwidth Priority:	EXT_WLAN_SUBNET	cy)
Maximize Bandwidth Usage	DMZ_SUBNET	
	WLAN-1-1_SUBNET	

NOTE: If you want to set SNAT as customized single/group address, you cannot set the next hop as Trunk.

One to One SNAT takes the second priority. If traffic doesn't match any policy route SNAT, the USG will goes to check whether there's One to One SNAT set. One to One SNAT is set in Configuration > Network > NAT. For detailed explanation, please go to section <u>1.4 Setting up One to One NAT</u>.

AT									
Configuration									
N	lote:								
If you want to configure SNAT, plase go to <u>Policy Route</u> .									
If yo	ou want to configure SNAT.	, plase go to <u>Policy Ro</u>	oute.						
If yo	ou want to configure SNAT. Add 📝 Edit 🍵 Remove	, plase go to <u>Policy Ro</u>	vate						
If yo	ou want to configure SNAT, Add 📝 Edit 🍵 Remove Status Name	, plase go to <u>Policy Ro</u> Activate @ Inacti Mapping Type	vate	Original IP	Mapped IP	Protocol	Original Port	Mapped Port	
If yo	Add C Edit T Remove	Plase go to <u>Policy Ro</u> Activate Policy Ro Inacti Mapping Type 1:1 NAT	vate Interface	Original IP WAN1_IP	Mapped IP web_svr	Protocol tcp	Original Port	Mapped Port	

3. NAT Loopback SNAT takes the third priority. NAT Loopback SNAT is generated automatically when you enable NAT Loopback in Configuration > Network > NAT.

ZyXEL

O Add NAT					? ×
🔠 Create new Object 👻					
General Settings					_
👿 Enable Rule					
Rule Name:	SVR_bk				
Port Mapping Type					
Classification:	Virtual Server	۲	1:1 NAT	Many 1:1 NAT	
Mapping Rule					
Incoming Interface:	wan2	~			
Original IP:	WAN2_IP	~			
Mapped IP:	web_svr	~			
Port Mapping Type:	Service	~			
Original Service:	нттр	~	TCP, 80		
Mapped Service:	нттр	~	TCP, 80		
Related Settings					
🖾 Epoble NAT Loophack 🔲					
Configure Firewall					
					<u> </u>
					ncel

For detailed explanation, please go to section **<u>1.6 NAT Loopback</u>**.

4. Default SNAT takes the last priority. USG ZyWALL uses the Default WAN Trunk to route traffic from intranet to internet, and maps the traffic's original address to the outgoing interface in the Default WAN Trunk. Go to Configuration > Network > Interface > Trunk.

Port Role Ethernet PPP Cellular WLAN V	VLAN Bridge Auxiliary Trunk	
Hide Advanced Settings		
Configuration		
📝 Enable Link Sticking 🔋		
Timeout: 300 (30-600 secon	inds) 🔢	
Default WAN Trunk		
🔽 Enable Default SNAT		
Default Trunk Selection		
SYSTEM_DEFAULT_WAN_TRUNK		
User Configured Trunk test	~	
User Configuration		
# Name	Algorithm	
# Name 1 test	Algorithm spill-over	
# Name 1 test I ● I ● I 0 f 1 I ● I ●	Algorithm spill-over	Displaying 1 - 1 of 1
# Name 1 test I Page I of 1 I Show 50 System Default	Algorithm spill-over	Displaying 1 - 1 of 1
# Name 1 test Id Image: Page 1 of 1	Algorithm spill-over	Displaying 1 - 1 of 1
# Name 1 test I test I Page 1 of 1 Image: Show 50 witheres System Default Image: Default content of the show 50 with the sh	Algorithm spill-over	Displaying 1 - 1 of 1
# Name 1 test I test II Page 1 of 1 Image: Show 50 withems System Default Image: Ima	Algorithm spill-over Algorithm If	Displaying 1 - 1 of 1

For detailed explanation, please go to section <u>**1.2 Default WAN Trunk and Default</u></u><u>SNAT.</u></u>**

1.2. Default WAN Trunk and Default SNAT

Default WAN Trunk and Default SNAT are the newly added features in ZLD v2.20. They're designed for user convenience. With Default WAN Trunk and Default SNAT, user doesn't need to configure policy routes to route intranet traffic to internet. This new routing feature will apply to the traffic from intranet to internet. USG ZyWALL determines whether the traffic is intranet or internet according to the interface type, which is also a newly added feature in ZLD v2.20.



1.2.1.Interface Type

In ZLD v2.2, user can define interface type as the following three types:

- Internal
- External
- General

You can flexibly define each interface's type according to your network scenario. Go to Configuration > Network > Interface > Ethernet.



📀 Edit Ethernet	ID Address		Mask	? X
III Show Advanced Settings				
General Settings				^
🔽 Enable Interface				
Interface Properties				
Interface Type:	general	▼ ■		
Interface Name:	internal			
Port:	external			
Zone:	OPT	×		
MAC Address:	00:23:F8:10:07:1E			
Description:			(Optional)	
IP Address Assignment				.
Get Automatically				
Ose Fixed IP Address				
IP Address:	0.0.0.0			
Subnet Mask:	0.0.0.0			
Gateway:		(Optional)		
Matric	0 (0-15)			~
			OK Canc	el

Internal interface is generally connected to the intranet which is behind the USG ZyWALL. An internal interface can act as DHCP server or DHCP Relay. However, it can't act as DHCP client.

Cithernet Name			Mack ? >
Show Advanced Settings			
nterface Properties			
Interface Type:	internal		
Interface Name:	lan1		
Port:	P4, P5		
Zone:	LAN1 👻		
MAC Address:	00:23:F8:10:07:1F		
Description:		(Optional)	
P Address Assignment			
IP Address:	192.168.1.1		
Subnet Mask:	255.255.255.0		
Subnet Mask: nterface Parameters	255.255.255.0		
Subnet Mask: nterface Parameters Egress Bandwidth:	255.255.255.0		
Subnet Mask: nterface Parameters Egress Bandwidth: HCP Setting	255.255.255.0		
Subnet Mask: nterface Parameters Egress Bandwidth: HCP Setting DHCP:	255.255.255.0 1048576 Kbps 1		
Subnet Mask: nterface Parameters Egress Bandwidth: HCP Setting DHCP: IP Pool Start Address (Optional):	255.255.255.0 1048576 Kbps 1 DHCP Server ¥ 192.168.1.33	Pool Size: 200	
Subnet Mask: Interface Parameters Egress Bandwidth: HCP Setting DHCP: IP Pool Start Address (Optional): First DNS Server (Optional):	255.255.255.0	Pool Size: 200	
Subnet Mask: Interface Parameters Egress Bandwidth: HCP Setting DHCP: IP Pool Start Address (Optional): First DNS Server (Optional): Second DNS server (Optional):	255.255.255.0 1048576 Kbps DHCP Server 192.168.1.33 ZyWALL Custom Defined	Pool Size: 200	

External interface is connected to the WAN side of the USG ZyWALL. An external interface can act as DHCP client. However, it can't act as DHCP server or DHCP relay.

NOTE: All ppp interfaces and aux interface are set as External by system.

Show Advanced Settings Interface Properties Interface Type: external Interface Type: external Interface Name: wan1 Port: PI Cone: WAN WA Address: 00:23:F8:10:07:1C Description: (Optional) P Address Assignment G Get Automatically 172:25:27:49 Use Fixed IP Address P Address Subnet Mask: Gateway: (Optional) Metric: 0 (Optional) Interface Parameters Egress Bandwidth: 1046576 Kbps I Connectivity Check Check Method: Emp Y	📀 Edit Ethernet	ID Address	? X
Interface Properties Interface Name: wani Port: Pit Zone: WAN MAC Address: O0:23:F8:10:07:1C Description: (Optional) P Address Assignment @ Get Automatically 172:25:27.49 Waters: Subnet Mask: Subnet Mask: Gateway: O (0-15) Interface Parameters Egress Bandwidth: Interface Parameters/ Egress Bandwidth: Interface Connectivity Check Connectivity Check (b) Contend	III Show Advanced Settings		
Interface Type: external Interface Name: wan1 Pot: P1 Zone: WAN MAC Address: 00:23F8:10:07:1C Description: (Optional) P Address Assignment © Get Automatically 172:25:27:49 © Use Fixed IP Address IP Address: Submet Mask: Gateway: © (Optional) Interface Parameters Egress Bandwidth: [Interface Parameters Egress Bandwidth: [Interface Parameters Connectivity Check Check Method: [Interface Parameters	Interface Properties		A
Interface Name: wan1 Port: P1 Zone: WAN WAC Address: 00:23:F9:10:07:1C Description: (Optional) P Address Assignment Get Automatically 172.25:27.49 Use Fixed IP Address IP Address IP Address: Subnet Mask: Gateway: (Optional) Metric: 0 (Optional) Metric: 0 (Optional) Interface Parameters Egress Bandwidth: 1046576 kbps Connectivity Check Check Method: imp v (metric)	Interface Type:	external	
Port: P1 Zone: WAN MAC Address: 00:23:F8:10:07:1C Description: (Optional) P Address Assignment • Get Automatically 172:25:27.49 • Use Fixed IP Address IP Address: Subnet Mask: Gateway: O (0-15)	Interface Name:	wan1	
Zone: WAN MAC Address: 00:23:F8:10:07:1C Description: (Optional) P Address Assignment @ Get Automatically 172:25:27:49 @ Use Fixed IP Address IP Address: Subnet Mask: Gateway: (Optional) Metric: 0 (Optional) Me	Port:	P1	
MAC Address: 00:23:F8:10:07:1C Description: PAddress Assignment Get Automatically 172:25:27:49 Get Automatically 172:25:27:49 Use Fixed IP Address IP Address IP Address: Geteway: Gottomal) Metric: 0 (Optional) Metric: 0 (Optional) Metric: 0 (Optional) Interface Parameters Egress Bandwidth: 1048576 Kbps Connectivity Check Check Method: imp interface C	Zone:	WAN	×
Description: (Optional) P Address Assignment • Get Automatically 172.25.27.49 • Use Fixed IP Address IP Address: Subnet Mask: Gateway: (Optional) Metric: 0 (0-15) Interface Parameters Egress Bandwidth: 1048576 Kbps 1 Connectivity Check Enable Connectivity Check Check Method: Image: Connectivity Check Check Method: Image: Connectivity Check	MAC Address:	00:23:F8:10:07:1C	
P Address Assignment Get Automatically 172.25.27.49 Use Fixed IP Address IP Address: Subnet Mask: Gateway: (Optional) Metric: 0 (Optional) Metric: 0 (Optional) Interface Parameters Egress Bandwidth: 1046576 Kbps Connectivity Check Check Method: Connectivity Check Check Method: Interface Parameters	Description:		(Optional)
P Address Assignment ③ Get Automatically ③ Use Fixed IP Address IP Address: Subnet Mask: Gateway: ③ (0-15) Interface Parameters Egress Bandwidth: 1048576 Kbps 1 Connectivity Check Check Method: Off			
	IP Address Assignment		
Use Fixed IP Address IP Address: Subnet Mask: Gateway: Gateway: 0 (Optional) Metric: 0 (Optional) Interface Parameters Egress Bandwidth: 1048576 Kbps 1 Connectivity Check Enable Connectivity Check Check Method: Image: Connectivity Check Image: Check Method: Image: Connectivity Check Image: Check Method:	Get Automatically	172.25.27.49	
IP Address: Subnet Mask: Gateway: (Optional) Metric: 0 (0-15) Interface Parameters Egress Bandwidth: Egress Bandwidth: 1048576 Kbps Connectivity Check Check Method: Connectivity Check Check Method: Connectivity Check Check Method: Connectivity Check Check Method:	Use Fixed IP Address		
Subnet Mask: Gateway: (Optional) Metric: 0 (0-15) Interface Parameters Egress Bandwidth: Egress Bandwidth: 1048576 kbps Connectivity Check Check Method: Enable Connectivity Check Check Method: Connectivity Check Check Method:	IP Address:		
Gateway: (Optional) Metric: 0 0 (0-15) Interface Parameters Egress Bandwidth: 1048576 Kbps ? Connectivity Check Connectivity Check Check Method: Improve Check Method: Connectivity Check Check Method: Connectivity Check	Subnet Mask:		
Metric: 0 (0-15) Interface Parameters Egress Bandwidth: Interface Parameters Interface Parameters Interface Param	Gateway:		(Optional)
Interface Parameters Egress Bandwidth: 1048576 Kbps 1 Connectivity Check Enable Connectivity Check Check Method: Imp Imp Imp	Metric:	0 (0-15)	
Interface Parameters Egress Bandwidth: 1046576 Kbps Connectivity Check Enable Connectivity Check Check Method: Image: Connectivity Check			
Egress Bandwidth: 1048576 Kbps 👔 Connectivity Check Enable Connectivity Check Check Method: imp	Interface Parameters		
Connectivity Check Enable Connectivity Check Check Method: Imp Connectivity Check Method: Check Method: Check Metho	Egress Bandwidth:	1048576	Kbps 🚺
Connectivity Check Enable Connectivity Check Check Method: Imp Check Method: Check Method: Check			
Enable Connectivity Check Check Method: Check Method:	Connectivity Check		
	Enable Connectivity Check		
	Check Method:	icmp	×
			OK Carrel

General interface can act both as DHCP client or DHCP server and DHCP relay. It's forward compatible with older ZLD versions. Also, if user wants to flexibly configure the interface, he also can set the type as General.



No data to display

General Settings	
🔽 Enable Interface	
Interface Properties	
Interface Type:	general 🗸 🔽
Interface Name:	ge2
Port:	P2
Zone:	WAN
MAC Address:	00:19:CB:98:FA:5F
Description:	(Optional)
IP Address Assignment	
Get Automatically	
Ose Fixed IP Address	
IP Address:	172.25.27.93
Subnet Mask:	255.255.255.0
Gateway:	172.25.27.254 (Optional)
Metric:	0 (0-15)
	man when an
DHCP Setting	
DHCP:	None
Enable IP/MAC Binding	
Enable Logs for IP/MAC Binding Violation	
Static DHCP Table	📀 Add 🛃 Edit 🍵 Remove

Below is interface type comparison table of different USG models.

Туре	Internal	External	General
Device Model	USG 100/200: LAN1, LAN2, DMZ	USG 100/200: WAN1,WAN2	USG300/1000/2000: gel, ge2, ge3, ge4. ge5
Set DHCP Client	Not Support	Support	Support
Set DHCP Server	Support	Not Support	Support
Set DHCP Relay	Support	Not Support	Support
Set Default Gateway	Not Support	Support	Support
Set Metric	Not Support	Support	Support
Set Ping Check	Not Support	Support	Support
MAC Address Setting	Not Support	Support	Support

 #
 IP Address ▲
 MAC
 Description

 I

 Page
 1
 of 1
 ▶
 ▶
 Ishow 50
 ♥
 items

1.2.2. Default WAN Trunk and default SNAT

1.2.2.1. Default WAN Trunk

When an interface type is set as External, this interface will be added automatically to the Default WAN Trunk. In other words, the Default WAN Trunk consists of all the USG ZyWALL's external interfaces.

For example, in USG200, interface wan1 and wan2 type are both external.

Interface Type:	external	
Interface Name:	wan1	
Port:	P1	
Zone:	WAN 👻	
MAC Address:	00:23:F8:10:07:1C	
Description:		(Optional)
Interface Type:	external	
Interface Name:	wan2	
Port:	P2	
Zone:	WAN 👻	
MAC Address:	00:23:F8:10:07:1D	
Description:		(Optional)

Go to Configuration > Network > Interface > Trunk, check the SYSTEM_DEFAULT_WAN_TRUNK.



_		_							
Port Role	Ethernet	PPP	Cellular	WLAN	VLAN	Bridge	Auxiliary	Trunk	
Show	Show Advanced Settings								
Configu	ration								
-		_							
V Er	able Link Sticking	1		_		_			
Ti	meout:		300	(30-600 s	econds)				
Default	WAN Trunk								
Defa	ult Trunk Selec	tion							
C	SYSTEM_DEFAI	JLT_WAN_1	TRUNK						
_									
6	Licer Configure	d Truck				4			
C) User Configure	d Trunk			1	*			
C) User Configure	d Trunk			~	*			
C User Co) User Configure	d Trunk				*			
User Co) User Configure Infiguration	d Trunk Remove	test	leference		~			
User Co) User Configure onfiguration Add 🕜 Edit 🎁 Name	d Trunk	test	leference	Alg	gorithm			
User Co Ø F # 1) User Configure onfiguration add Batten Name test	d Trunk Remove	test	Reference	Alg	gorithm ill-over			
User Co) User Configure onfiguration Add Edit Name test Page 1	d Trunk	test	teference	Alg	gorithm ill-over			
User Co # 1 1) User Configure onfiguration Add P Edit Name test Vage 1	d Trunk	test Image: Show	Reference	Alg spi ns	gorithm ill-over			
User Cc User Cc # 1 H System) User Configure Infiguration Add P Edit Name test Page 1 Default	d Trunk	test Cobject F Show	teference	Alg spi	gorithm ill-over			
User Co User Co # 1 H System	 b) User Configure b) Gale b) Edit c) Edit <lic) edit<="" li=""> <lic) <="" edit<="" td=""><td>d Trunk</td><td>test</td><td>teference</td><td>Alg spi</td><td>gorithm ill-over</td><td></td><td></td></lic)></lic)>	d Trunk	test	teference	Alg spi	gorithm ill-over			
User Co # 1 N System	 b) User Configure b) Gale c) Edit <lic) edit<="" li=""> <lic) <="" edit<="" td=""><td>d Trunk</td><td>test</td><td>teference</td><td>Alg spi</td><td>gorithm ill-over</td><td></td><td></td></lic)></lic)>	d Trunk	test	teference	Alg spi	gorithm ill-over			
User Co # 1 N System	 User Configure Infiguration Indiana India	d Trunk	test Cobject F Show	teference	Alg spi ns Alg	gorithm ill-over			
User Co	User Configure Infiguration Mdd Pedit Name test Page 1 Default dit Configure SYSTEM_DEFA	d Trunk	test Control Control Contro Control Control Control Control Control	teference	Alg spi ns Alg	gorithm ill-over			

Double click this default WAN trunk, you will find it consists of all the external interfaces.

Please be noted that all ppp interfaces and aux interface are external type by default.

Load	Balancing Algorithn	n:	Least Load First	·
#	Member	Mode	Ingress Bandwidth	Egress Bandwidth
1	wan1	Active	1048576 kpbs	1048576 kpbs
2	wan2	Active	1048576 kpbs	1048576 kpbs
3	aux	Passive	56 kpbs	56 kpbs
4	wan1_ppp	Active	1048576 kpbs	1048576 kpbs
5	wan2_ppp	Active	1048576 kpbs	1048576 kpbs
6	opt_ppp	Active	1048576 kpbs	1048576 kpbs
14	4 Page 1 c	of 1 🕨 🕅 Sh	ow 50 👻 items	Displaying 1 - 6 of 6

User can also add customized default WAN trunk. Go to Configuration > Network > Interface > Trunk. Add customized WAN trunk in User Configuration, then choose User Configuration Trunk, and select the customized WAN trunk.



Devis Dieles - This second - DDD - Collision - UIII AN - UIII A	u Datas Audious	Truck						
Port Role Ethernet PPP Cellular WLAN VLA	N Bridge Auxiliary	Тгипк						
Show Advanced Settings								
Configuration								
📝 Enable Link Sticking 🔋								
Timeout: 300 (30-600 seconds) 🔲							
Default WAN Trunk								
Default Trunk Selection								
SYSTEM_DEFAULT_WAN_TRUNK								
User Configured Trunk test	~							
User Configuration								
💿 Add 📝 Edit 🍵 Remove 🔚 Object Reference	😮 Add 📝 Edit 🍵 Remove 🔚 Object Reference							
# Name	Algorithm							
1 test	spill-over							
■ ■ Page 1 of 1 ▶ ▶ Show 50 ▼ items			Displaying 1 - 1 of 1					

1.2.2.2. Default SNAT

Default SNAT is enabled by default. Click Show Advanced Settings, the Default SNAT setting will show. Default SNAT will map traffic's source address to the outgoing interface address in the default WAN Trunk.

Port Role Ethernet PF	P Cellular	WLAN VLAN	Bridge Auxilia	ry Trunk	
Show Advanced Settings					
<u> </u>	1				
Configuration					
📝 Enable Link Sticking 🔋					
Timeout:	300	(30-600 seconds) [
Default WAN Trunk					
Default Trunk Selection					
SYSTEM_DEFAULT_W	AN_TRUNK				
Oser Configured Trunk	(test	*			
			-		
	I and I am				
Port Role Ethernet PPP	Cellular WL	LAN VLAN BI	ridge Auxiliary	Trunk	
Hide Advanced Settings					
Configuration					
🔽 Enable Link Sticking 🔲					
Timeout:	300 (30	0-600 seconds) 🔢			
		_			
Default WAN Trunk					
💟 Enable Default SNAT					
Default Trunk Selection					
SYSTEM_DEFAULT_WAR	I_TRUNK			N	
Oser Configured Trunk	test	*		l	¢

1.2.2.3. Using Default WAN Trunk and Default SNAT

When USG receives traffic from an internal interface, and there's no direct route, policy route, one to one NAT route, static route or dynamic route applicable to this traffic, USG will send it out from the Default WAN Trunk.



Network scenario:

In the example below, client 192.168.1.33 from intranet wants to ping an internet server 8.8.8.8.



There's no policy route, or NAT 1:1 route set for the traffic. Policy route setting:

Policy R	Policy Route Static Route RIP OSPF												
Hide Advanced Settings													
BWM Global Setting													
🔽 En	able BWM												
Configu	ration												
📄 Us	e Policy R	oute to Ov	verride Direct Rou	te									
() A	🕲 Add 📝 Edit 🍟 Remove 💡 Activate 🕼 Inactivate 📣 Move												
# _ Status User Schedule Incoming Source Destination DSCP Code Service Next-Hop DSCP Marking SNAT BVM													
🛛 🔄 Page 1 of 1 🕨 🕅 Show 50 🗸 items No data to display													

NAT setting:

NAT										
Configuration										
	uningai dalan									
🐧 Note:										
If you want to configure SM	AT, plase go to <u>Policy Rou</u>	te.								
😳 Add <table-cell> Edit 👕 Remo</table-cell>	ⓒ Add ∠ Edit 🍵 Remove 💡 Activate 💮 Inactivate									
# Status Name	Mapping Type	Interface	Original IP	Mapped IP	Protocol	Original Port	Mapped Port			
4										

Clint 192.168.1.33 tries to ping an internet server e.g. 8.8.8.8, the ping is successful. The traffic is in fact sent out from the Default WAN Trunk.

ZyXEL

ZyWALL USG Support Notes

```
C:\Documents and Settings\Administrator>ipconfig
Windows IP Configuration
Ethernet adapter Local Area Connection:
       Connection-specific DNS Suffix . :
       . . . . . . : 255.255.255.0
       Subnet Mask
       Default Gateway . . . . . . . . : 192.168.1.1
Ethernet adapter 本地连接:
       Media State . . . . . . . . . . : Media disconnected
C:\Documents and Settings\Administrator>ping 8.8.8.8
Pinging 8.8.8.8 with 32 bytes of data:
Reply from 8.8.8.8: bytes=32 time=122ms TTL=236
Reply from 8.8.8.8: bytes=32 time=116ms TTL=236
Reply from 8.8.8.8: bytes=32 time=84ms TTL=236
Reply from 8.8.8.8: bytes=32 time=82ms TTL=236
Ping statistics for 8.8.8.8:
   Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
   Minimum = 82ms, Maximum = 122ms, Average = 101ms
```

1.3. Setting up Virtual Server

It's a common practice to place company servers behind the USG ZyWALL's protection, and at the mean time, letting WAN side clients/servers accessing the intranet servers. For example, the company may have mail server, which needs to be able to be connect by internet mail servers and clients; the company may also have web server, ftp server, etc, which all need to be accessed from internet. We should configure Virtual Server rules to achieve these applications.

1.3.1.Network Scenario

In the scenario below, network administrator wants the web server (192.168.1.5) to be accessed from WAN1, and the web server (192.168.1.6) to be accessed from WAN2.



1.3.2.Configuration steps

Step1. Go to Configuration > Network > NAT, click Add button to add one NAT rule.

NAT										
Config	Configuration									
N IF y	Note: ou want to configure SNAT, pl	ase go to <u>Policy Rout</u>	<u>e</u> .							
\bigcirc	🙆 Add 📝 Edit 🍟 Remove 💡 Activate 🖗 Inactivate									
#	Add a new rule	Mapping Type	Interface	Original IP	Mapped IP	Protocol	Original Port	Mapped Port		
14	No data to display									

Step2. In the rule editing window, fill in all the necessary fields.

Port Mapping Type: Select Virtual Server

Incoming Interface: For the web server, since you want it to be accessed from WAN1, select wan1.

Original IP: You can choose User Defined, and manually enter the WAN1 IP. Or you can first create one address object from the Create new Object field, and then choose this object from the Original IP dropdown list.

Mapped IP: Specify the server IP address. In this case, it's 192.168.1.5. You may also first create one object then select from the dropdown list.

Port Mapping: In this case, to avoid conflicting with the http port of USG itself, we set the original port as TCP 8080, and mapped port as TCP 80.



Add NAT					? >
🛛 Create new Object 🔻					
General Settings					<u>^</u>
📝 Enable Rule					
Rule Name:	web				
Port Mapping Type					
Classification:	Virtual Server	1:1 NAT	🔘 Man	y 1:1 NAT	
Mapping Rule					
Incoming Interface:	wan1	~			
Original IP:	User Defined	~			
User-Defined Original IP:	200.0.0.1	(IP Address)			
Mapped IP:	User Defined	*			
User-Defined Mapped IP:	192.168.1.5	(IP Address)			
Port Mapping Type:	Port	*			
Protocol Type:	TCP	~			
Original Port:	8080				
Mapped Port:	80				
				ок	Cancel

Following the steps above, add the virtual server rules for the mail server to forward SMTP and POP3 from WAN2 to the server 192.168.1.6.

т										
nfiguration										
1 50										
<mark>€</mark> ¶ If yo	ote: u want to	configure SNAT,	, plase go to <u>Policy Ro</u>	ute.						
O 4	Add 📝 Ea	lit 🍵 Remove	💡 Activate 💡 Inacti	/ate						
#	Status	Name	Mapping Type	Interface	Original IP	Mapped IP	Protocol	Original Port	Mapped Port	
	9	web	Virtual Server	¤ wan1	200.0.0.1	192.168.1.5	tcp	8080	80	
	9	mail_smtp	Virtual Server	■ wan2	200.0.1.1	192.168.1.6	tep	 SMTP 	SMTP	
	9	mail_pop3	Virtual Server	■ wan2	200.0.1.1	192.168.1.6	top	■POP3	■POP3	

Don't forget to configure corresponding firewall rule to allow the http, smtp and pop3 traffic from WAN to the LAN servers.

irewall	Session Limit									
Seneral Setting										
iciici ai seconga										
Enable Firewall										
	Allow Asymmetric	al Route								
irewall R	ule Summary									
From Zor	ne: any		▼ To Zo	one: any		▼ Refr	esh			
a da	i 🗋 rate 🚔 r	lamaua 🧔 Act	usto 🖉 Teactiusti	a Milliona						
U AUC	. 🖉 cuic 🛄 R	terriove y Acc	vate vy matuvati	e primove						
Status	Priority 🔺	From	То	Schedule	User	Source	Destination	Service	Access	Log
9	1	<th>LAN1</th> <th>none</th> <th>any</th> <th>any</th> <th>mail</th> <th>POP3</th> <th>allow</th> <th>no</th>	LAN1	none	any	any	mail	POP3	allow	no
9	2	<th>LAN1</th> <th>none</th> <th>any</th> <th>any</th> <th>= mail</th> <th>SMTP</th> <th>allow</th> <th>no</th>	LAN1	none	any	any	= mail	SMTP	allow	no
9	3	¤ ₩AN	LAN1	none	any	any	■ web	HTTP	allow	no
Q 4 atVAN ZyWALL none any any atDefault_Allow_b allow no										
	5	■ WAN	ZyWALL	none	any	any	any	any	deny	log
										-

Please not that for the web server forwarding firewall rule, the service is http TCP port 80 instead of TCP 8080. Because in general packet flow, DNAT process precedes firewall checking.

1.4. Setting up One to One NAT

1.4.1.Network Scenario

One to One NAT makes sure one local IP maps to one unique global IP, no matter the traffic is outgoing from local to internet, or incoming from internet to local.



In the scenario above, we map the WAN global IP 200.0.0.1 to the intranet web server 192.168. 1.5. So, when an http client on the internet wants to access the server, its original IP is 200.0.0.1. After the USG receives the traffic, it maps the destination address to 192.168.1.5. When the server replies, its original source IP is 192.168.1.5, when USG receives it, it will translate the source to 200.0.0.1 and send out to the internet client.

After the One to One NAT rule is set, the USG will automatically generate a One to One routing rule in the system, as discussed in section <u>1.1.2 Routing priority</u>. So when the server 192.168.1.5 initiates traffic to access internet, if there's no applicable policy route, the USG will use this One to One routing, send out the traffic through the WAN interface 200.0.0.1, and maps the source address to 200.0.0.1.

1.4.2.Configuration Steps

Step1. Go to Configuration > Network > NAT, click Add button to add one NAT rule.

NAT									
Config	uration								
N If y	Note: ou want to configure SNAT,	plase go to <u>Policy Rout</u>	<u>.e</u> .						
\odot	Add 📝 Edit 🍵 Remove	💡 Activate 🛛 🖗 Inactival	te						
#	Add a new rule	Mapping Type	Interface	Original IP	Mapped IP	Protocol	Original Port	Mapped Port	
14	I Page 1 of 1 >> I Show 50 vitems No data to display								

Step2. In the rule editing window, fill in all the necessary fields.

Port Mapping Type: 1:1 NAT.

Incoming Interface: Select the WAN interface you want the USG to receive the incoming traffic to the server.

Original IP: You can choose User Defined, and manually enter the WAN1 IP. Or you can first create one address object from the Create new Object field, and then choose this object from the Original IP dropdown list.

Mapped IP: Specify the server IP address. In this case, it's 192.168.1.5. You may also first create one object then select from the dropdown list.

Port Mapping: In this case, we choose mapping type as "Service", and service HTTP.

and a contract of the second s			
eneral Settings			
📝 Enable Rule			
Rule Name:	server		
ort Mapping Type			
Classification:	O Virtual Server	I:1 NAT Many 1:1 NAT	
tanning Rule			
			_
Incoming Interface:	wani	*	
Original IP:	User Defined	*	
User-Defined Original IP:	200.0.0.1	(IP Address)	
Mapped IP:	User Defined	*	
User-Defined Mapped IP:	192.168.1.5	(IP Address)	
Port Mapping Type:	Service	v	
Original Service:	НТТР	▼ TCP, 80	
Mapped Service:	HTTP	✓ TCP, 80	
elated Settings			

Don't forget to configure corresponding firewall rule to allow the http traffic from WAN to the LAN server 192.168.1.5.



irewall	Session Limit									
neral S	ettings									
cherar 5	eccings									
Enable Firewall										
Illow Asymmetrical Route										
rewall Ri	ule Summary									
	ale Salinary									
From Zon	ie: any		V To Zone	: any		 Refresh 				
Add	📝 Edit 🃋 Rei	nove 🎯 Activate	e 🖗 Inactivate i	Move 💦						
Status	Priority 🔺	From	То	Schedule	User	Source	Destination	Service	Access	Log
0										
9	1	чWAN	■LAN1	none	any	any	¤ web	■HTTP	allow	no
9	2		RLAN1 ZyWALL	none	any any	any any	¤web any	<pre></pre>	allow allow	no no
<u>୍</u> କି ଜୁ	3		R LAN1 ZyWALL ZyWALL	none none	any any any	any any any	any any	<pre> HTTP Default_Allow_) any </pre>	allow allow deny	no no log
0 0 0 0 0 0 0	2 3 4		RLAN1 ZyWALL ZyWALL any (Excluding Zy	none none none	any any any any	any any any any	any any any any	Control C	allow allow deny deny	no no log log
9 9 9 9	2 3 4 5		R LAN1 ZyWALL ZyWALL any (Excluding Zy ZyWALL	none none none none none	any any any any any	any any any any any	any any any any any	Allow Allow Allow Allow Allow Allow Allow Content	allow allow deny deny allow	no no log log no
9 9 9 9 9	2 3 4 5 6	a WAN a WAN a WAN a WAN a DMZ	aLAN1 ZWVALL ZWVALL any (Excluding Zy ZWVALL ZWVALL	none none none none none	any any any any any any	any any any any any any	¤web any any any any any	Allow_ any any any any any any any	allow allow deny deny allow deny	no No log No log
9 9 9 9 9 9	2 3 4 5 6 7	a WAN a WAN a WAN a WAN a DMZ a DMZ	RLAN1 ZyWALL ZyWALL any (Excluding Zy ZyWALL ZyWALL any (Excluding Zy	none none none none none none	any any any any any any any	any any any any any any any	R web any any any any any any	Altr Altow_t Altow_t any any any any any any any any	allow deny deny allow deny deny deny	no log log no log
ତ ତ ତ ତ ତ ତ ତ	2 3 4 5 6 7 8	aWAN aWAN aWAN aWAN aWAN aDMZ aDMZ aDMZ aDMZ aWAN	LAN1 ZyWALL ZyWALL any (Excluding Zy ZyWALL zyWALL any (Excluding Zy avy (none none none none none none none	any any any any any any any any	any any any any any any any	any any any any any any any any	HTTP Default_Allow_1 any any any any any any any any any	allow deny deny allow deny deny deny allow	no log log no log log
	2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	aWAN aWAN aWAN aWAN aDMZ aDMZ aWLAN	ALANI ZyWALL ZyWALL any (Excluding Zy ZyWALL any (Excluding Zy avyALL	none none none none none none none none	any	any any any any any any any any	any any any any any any any any any		allow allow deny allow deny deny deny allow allow	no log log no log log no

1.5. Setting up Many One to One NAT

Many One to One NAT rule equals setting up the corresponding number of One to One NAT rules.

The number of IP addresses in the original IP Subnet/Range should equal number of IP addresses in the Mapped Subnet/Range. The first IP in the original range will be mapped to the first IP in the mapped range, the second IP in the original range will be mapped to the second IP in the mapped rang... and so on.



1.5.1. Application Scenario

The scenario above requires that a range of global addresses are mapped to a range of local addresses with the same number of addresses.

1.5.2. Configuration Steps

Step1. Go to Configuration > Network> NAT, click Add button to add one NAT rule.

NAT										
Config	Configuration									
N If y	Note: ou want to configure SNAT, pla	ise go to <u>Policy Rout</u>	<u>e</u> .							
\bigcirc	🚱 Add 📝 Edit 🍟 Remove 💡 Activate 💡 Inactivate									
#	# ^{q-y} Add a new rule Mapping Type Interface Original IP Mapped IP Protocol Original Port Mapped Port									
14	No data to display									

Step2. In the rule editing window, fill in all the necessary fields.

Port Mapping Type: Many 1:1 NAT.

Incoming Interface: Select the WAN interface you want the USG to receive the incoming traffic to the servers.

Original IP: First create address objects for the original IP range and mapped IP range from the Create new Object field, and then choose this object from the Original IP dropdown list.

Mapped IP: Choose the address object from the dropdown list.

Port Mapping: It can only set as any.

📀 Add NAT					
🛅 Create new Object 👻				Create Address	0
General Settings				Name:	mapped
Enable Rule				Address Type:	RANGE
Rule Name:	servers			Starting IP Address:	192.168.1.5
Port Mapping Type				End IP Address:	192.168.1.9
Classification:	Virtual Server	0	1:1 NAT	any	OK
Mapping Rule				📀 Create Address	
Incoming Interface:	wan1	~			
Original IP Subnet/Range:	original	~	RANGE, 200.0.0.1-200.0.0.5	Name:	original
Mapped IP Subnet/Range:	mapped	~	RANGE, 192.168.1.5-192.168.1.10	Address Type:	RANGE
Port Mapping Type:	any			Starting IP Address:	200.0.0.1
Related Settings				End IP Address:	200.0.0.5
Enable NAT Loopback !! Configure Firewall !!					

Below is the NAT rule overview after configuration is done.



NAT												
Configuration												
5	🕅 Note:											
Ify	If you want to configure SNAT, plase go to <u>Policy Route</u> .											
0	🔿 Add 📝 Frite 👕 Remove 🙆 Artivate 🔟 Tractivate											
#	Status	Name	Mapping Type	Interface	Original IP	Mapped IP	Protocol	Original Port	Mapped Port			
1	@	servers	Many 1:1 NAT	■wan1	<pre>eoriginal</pre>	mapped	any					
14	4 4 Page 1 of 1 ▶ Show 50 v items Displaying 1 - 1 of 1											

After the Many 1:1 NAT rule is set up, a set of one to one routing rules will be automatically generated in the USG ZyWALL.

Don't forget to configure corresponding firewall rule to allow traffic from WAN to the LAN server range.

General Settings	Session Limit												
General Settings													
Image: Status Pronty → From To Schedule User Source Destination Service Access Log Image: Status Priority → From To Schedule User Source Destination Service Access Log Image: Status Priority → From To Schedule User Source Destination Service Access Log Image: Status Priority → From To Schedule User Source Destination Service Access Log Image: Status Priority → From To Schedule User Source Destination Service Access Log Image: Status Priority → From To Schedule User Source Destination Service Access Log Image: Status Priority → From To Schedule User Source Destination Service Access Log Image: Status Priority → Image: Schedule Image: Schedule Image: Schedule<	General Settings												
Image: Prove of the prove													
Allow Asymmetrical Route From Zone: any To Zone: any Refresh Add Edt: Remove Catchate Move Refresh Add Edt: Remove Catchate Move Destination Service Access Log Add Image: Advise in the service of the	Cable Firewall												
Insurtivate summary Refresh From Zone: any Refresh Add Edk Remove Activate Inscrivate Move Status Priority From To Schedule User Source Destination Service Access Log 9 1 NVMAN RLANI none any any any allow no 9 2 NVMAN RLANI none any any any allow no 9 3 RVMAN ZyWALL none any any any allow no 9 4 RVMAN ZyWALL none any any any allow no	Allow Asymmetrical Route												
increal Rule Summary From Zone: any To Zone: any Refresh Add Edx Remove Activate All Move Status Priority A From To Schedule User Source Destination Service Access Log 9 1 avAni none any any armspeed any allow no 9 2 avAni aLANI none any any armspeed aHTP allow no 9 3 avAni ZyWAIL none any any any allow no 9 4 avVAN ZyWAILL none any any any allow no													
From Zone: any To Zone: any Refresh Add Image: Add refresh Image: Add refresh Image: Add refresh Image: Add refresh Status Priority A From To Schedule User Source Destination Service Access Log Image: Add refresh Log Image: Add refresh Image: Add refres	Firewall Rule Summary												
Add Edk Remove Q Activate Move Status Priority ^ From To Schedule User Source Destination Service Access Log Q 1 NVAN sLAMI none any any any any allow no Q 2 styven sLAMI none any any any allow no Q 3 styven ZyWAN sLAMI none any any any allow no Q 4 styven ZyWALL none any any any allow no	From Zonon and To Zonon and the Defent												
Status Priority ▲ From To Schedule User Source Destination Service Access Log Image: Status Priority ▲ From To Schedule User Source Destination Service Access Log Image: Status Priority ▲ From To Schedule User Source Destination Service Access Log Image: Status Priority ▲ Image: Schedule any any any allow no Image: Schedule 1 Image: Schedule none any any allow no Image: Schedule 2 Image: Schedule none any any allow no Image: Schedule 3 Image: Schedule none any any any allow no Image: Schedule 3 Image: Schedule None any any any allow no Image: Schedule 4 Image: Schedule none any any any deny log	rrom zone: any io zone: any Refresh												
Status Priority From To Schedule User Source Destination Service Access Log 9 1 NVAN R_LAN1 none any any nampped any allow no 9 2 NVAN R_LAN1 none any any nweb representation allow no 9 3 NVAN Z/WALL none any any any no no 9 4 NVAN Z/WALL none any any any allow no	💿 Add 📝 Edit 🎁 Remove 💡 Activate 🖓 Inactivate 📣 Move												
Image: 1 The WAN The LANT none any any The mapped any allow no Image: 2 The WAN The LANT none any any any allow no Image: 2 The WAN The LANT none any any any allow no Image: 3 The WAN Town any any any any allow no Image: 3 The WAN Town any any any any allow no Image: 4 Town Town any any any any allow no Image: 4 Town Town any	ority From To Schedule User Source Destination Service Access Log												
Q 2 • WAN • LANI none any any • web • HTTP allow no Q 3 • WAN ZyWALL none any any any • Use allow no Q 4 • WAN ZyWALL none any any any any deny low no	WAN LAN1 none any any <u>anapped</u> any allow no												
Image: Constraint of the second sec	aWAN aLAM none any any aweb aHTTP allow no												
Q 4 N ZyWALL none any any any any deny log	«WAN ZyWALL none any any any any Default_Allow_V allow no												
	NVAN ZyWALL none any any any any deny log												
9 5 EVVAN any Excluding Zy none any any any any deny log	α.VVAN any (Excluding Zy none any any any any deny log												

1.6.NAT Loopback

Company server is located in the local network of the USG ZyWALL. You can create Virtual server rule or 1:1 NAT rule to allow WAN side clients to connect to the server. You may also needs the server to be accessed by the local clients via the server's global IP address. For example, local clients try to access the company server by its domain name. The domain name will be resolved to the global IP by DNS. Under this circumstance, you can enable NAT Loopback.

1.6.1.Network Scenario

Company server (192.168.1.33) is placed in the local subnet, the local client (192.168.1.33) which is in the same subnet with the server wants to access the server



via the USG's global IP address. Enable NAT Loopback can fulfill this application.



1.6.2.Configuration Steps

Step1. Go to Configuration > Network > NAT, click Add button to add one NAT rule.

NAT											
Config	juration										
🐧 Note: If you want to configure SNAT, plase go to Policy Route.											
\bigcirc	🐼 Add 📝 Edit 🃋 Remove 💡 Activate 💡 Inactivate										
#	Add a new rule	Mapping Type	Interface	Original IP	Mapped IP	Protocol	Original Port	Mapped Port			
14											

Step2. In the rule editing window, fill in all the necessary fields. And enable NAT Loopback.

🔾 Add NAT			? ×
🛅 Create new Object 👻			
Rule Name:	servers		<u>~</u>
Port Mapping Type			
Classification:	Virtual Server	1:1 NAT Many 1:1 NAT	
Mapping Rule			
Incoming Interface:	wan1	~	
Original IP:	User Defined	~	
User-Defined Original IP:	172.25.27.75	(IP Address)	
Mapped IP:	User Defined	~	
User-Defined Mapped IP:	192.168.1.5	(IP Address)	
Port Mapping Type:	Service	~	
Original Service:	SMTP	▼ TCP, 25	
Mapped Service:	SMTP	✓ TCP, 25	
Related Settings			
Configure Firewall			
			~
		ок	Cancel

After NAT Loopback is enabled, no policy route is needed, USG will automatically checking routing table. And it will only do SNAT for the local clients in the same subnet with the server. The source addresses of clients from WAN side and local clients in the other subnets will remain the original.

1.7. NAT with Proxy ARP

Sometimes user may want to use some non-interface IP as the global IP for some servers, or want to do SNAT for some local traffic to map the source address to some non-interface IP.

For example, user has 3 public IP from ISP, 200.0.0.1, 200.0.0.2, 200.0.1.1. User set 200.0.0.1 as WAN 1 IP, 200.0.1.1 as WAN2 IP. But he/she wants users to use 200.0.0.2 to access the intranet server, e.g. 192.168.1.5, by adding one NAT rule as below:

Incoming interface: WAN1 Original IP: 200.0.0.2 Mapped IP: 192.168.1.5

In ZLD v2.1x, after user added the NAT rule as above, it will automatically created one Virtual Interface on the Incoming interface with the non-interface IP. In this example, it will add one Virtual interface on WAN1, with IP address 200.0.0.2. However, there's a disadvantage in this way: after the NAT rule is created, not only the traffic to access the intranet server will be allowed, but the USG can also be accessed by this non-interface IP, which brings a security concern that some hackers may use this non-interface IP to login USG to malicious actions on the USG. Besides, you cannot map the outgoing traffic's source IP to a non-interface IP. Because the USG has no way to know that the non-interface IP belongs to itself. In ZLD v2.20, after user added the NAT rule as above, it will automatically create proxy ARP table to make the non-interface IP corresponding the incoming interface's MAC. It will only allow the traffic accessing the intranet server in this NAT rule, other traffic will be dropped by the USG.

Also, in ZLD v2.20, the USG can map outgoing traffic's source IP to a non-interface IP by creating proxy ARP table to map the non-interface IP to the outgoing interface's MAC.

1.7.1. Application Scenario

In the secnario below, the company gets 4 IP addresses: 200.0.0.1, 200.0.0.2, 200.0.1.1, 200.0.1.2. The network administrator set WAN1 200.0.0.1, WAN2 200.0.1.1. And he/she wants the intranet server 192.168.1.5 to be accessed via WAN1 by IP 200.0.0.2. Also, he/she wants the subnet clients 192.168.2.0/24 to go out via WAN2, and maps the source IP to 200.0.1.2.



1.7.2.Configuration Steps

Step1. Go to Configuration > Network > Interface, set up WAN1 and WAN2 address.

Port Role	Ethernet	PPP	Cellular	WLAN	VLAN	Bridge	Auxiliary	Trunk			
ionfiguration											
e e	Edit 🍵 Remove	💡 Activat	te 🌚 Inacti	vate 🖷	Ireate Virtua	al Interface	📑 Object Re	ference			
#	Status	Name		1	P Address					Mask	
1		wan1			STATIC 200.0.0.1					255.255.255.0	
2	@	wan2			STATIC 200.0.1.1					255.255.255.0	
3	@	opt			STATIC 192.168.4.1					255.255.255.0	
4	@	lan1			STATIC 192.168.1.1					255.255.255.0	
5	@	lan2			STATIC 192.168.2.1					255.255.255.0	
6	@	ext-wian			STATIC 10.59.0.1					255.255.255.0	
7	@	dmz			STATIC 19	92.168.3.1				255.255.255.0	

Step2. To fulfill the requirement that the intranet server could be accessed via WAN1 by the non-interface IP 200.0.0.2, go to Configuration > Network > NAT, add one rule as below. Incoming interface: WAN1 Original IP: 200.0.0.2 Mapped IP: 192.168.1.5



er 💿 1:1 NAT	Many 1:1 NAT	
rer 💿 1:1 NAT	🔘 Many 1:1 NAT	
rer 💿 1:1 NAT	Many 1:1 NAT	
~		
~		
*		
(IP Adaress)		
~		
(IP Address)		
~		
▼ TCP, 20 - 21		
▼ TCP, 20 - 21		
	(IP Address) (IP Address) (IP Address) (IP CP, 20 - 21) (IP CP, 20 - 21)	(IP Address) (IP Address) TCP, 20 - 21 TCP, 20 - 21

Check the ARP table. You will see the record for 200.0.0.2.

Router> show arp-table Address 192.168.1.33 200.0.0.254	HWtype ether	— HWaddress Ø0:18:78:86:86:89 (incomplete)	Flags Mask C	l face lan1 wan1
200.0.0.2	*	<pre><from_interface></from_interface></pre>	MP	wan1

Step3. To fulfill the requirement that the local subnet 192.168.2.0/24 goes out from WAN2, and source addresses mapped to the non-interface IP 200.0.1.2, go to Configuration > Network > Routing > Policy Route, add one rule as below. Source Address: 192.168.2.0/24 Destination: Any Next Hop: WAN2 SNAT: Address Object WAN2_SNAT (200.0.1.2)


Create new Object 🔻				
Please select one member:	Ian∠	*		
Source Address:	LAN2_SUBNET	~		
Destination Address:	any	~		
DSCP Code:	any	~		
Schedule:	none	~		
Service:	any	~		
ext-Hon				
Туре:	Interface	~		
Interface:	wan2	~		
- · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				
Auto-Disable				
SCP Marking				
Auto-Disable SCP Marking DSCP Marking:	preserve	×		
Auto-Disable SCP Marking DSCP Marking: ddress Translation	preserve	v		
Auto-Disable SCP Marking DSCP Marking: ddress Translation Source Network Address Translation:	preserve WAN2 SNAT	Y		
Auto-Disable SCP Marking DSCP Marking: ddress Translation Source Network Address Translation:	preserve WAN2_SNAT	Y		
Auto-Disable SCP Marking DSCP Marking: ddress Translation Source Network Address Translation: andwidth Shaping	preserve WAN2_SNAT	V Create Address		?
Auto-Disable SCP Marking DSCP Marking: ddress Translation Source Network Address Translation: andwidth Shaping Maximum Bandwidth:	preserve WAN2_SNAT	Create Address	WAN2_SNAT	?
Auto-Disable SCP Marking DSCP Marking: ddress Translation Source Network Address Translation: andwidth Shaping Maximum Bandwidth: Bandwidth Priority:	preserve WAN2_SNAT 0 Kbps 0 (1-7, 1)	Create Address Name: Address Type:	WAN2_SNAT HOST	?

Check the ARP table. You will see the record for 200.0.1.2.

Router> show arp-table				
Address	HWtype	HWaddress	Flags Mask	I face
192.168.1.33	ether	ØØ: 1B: 78: 86: 86: 89	C _	lani
200.0.0.254		(incomplete)		wani
200.0.0.2	*	<pre><from interface=""></from></pre>	MP	wani
200.0.1.2	*	<pre><from interface=""></from></pre>	MP	wan2

1.8. Policy Route vs. Direct Route

Normally, in USG's routing priority, direct route takes priority over policy routes. Sometimes, you may need the policy route takes priority over direct route, there's an option to allow you to achieve this.

Go to Configuration > Network > Routing > Polity Route, click the icon Show Advanced Settings. Then enable the function Use Polity Route to Override Direct Route.



olicy I	Route	Static R	oute RIP	OSPF								
Show	Advanced	Settings										
WM G	ilobal Set	ting	-									
V E	nable BWN	1										
nfigu	uration											
	Add 📝 I	idit 🍵 P	temove 🂡 Act	vate 🖗 Inacti	vate 📣 Move							
0					-	Destination	DCCD Code	Convice	blood bloo	DCCD Marking	ChieT	500A4
# ^	Status	User	Schedule	Incoming	Source	Destination	DSCF COUB	Service	Next-hop	DSCP Warking	SNAT	DVVW

Policy Route Static Route RIP	OSPF				
Hide Advanced Settings					
BWM Global Setting					
💟 Enable BWM					
Configuration					
👿 Use Policy Route to Override Direct Route					
💿 Add 📝 Edit 🏢 Remove 💡 Activat	te 💡 Inactivate 📣 Move				
# Status User Schedule Ir	ncoming Source	Destination DSCP Code	Service Next-Hop	DSCP Marking SNAT	EV/M
1 🤪 any none e	alan2 aLAN2_SUBNET	any any	any swan2	preserveS	NAT 0

1.9. Routing for IPSec VPN

In ZLD v2.20, after you created IPSec VPN rules, you don't need to add corresponding Policy Route for routing the VPN traffic any more. The USG will automatically add Policy Route according to the phase 2 Local/Remote Policy.

Direct-connected Subnets
Policy Route #1, #2, #n
+
Many 1 to 1 NAT #1,, #n
Auto-created VPN route
Site to Site VPN
Dynamic VPN
<u></u>
Static and dynamic route
Default WAN Trunk
* · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Main route table

Since Policy Route has higher priority, you can create policy route to override the system auto generated IPSec VPN routes. Or you can also add policy routes to let traffic other than in the VPN Phase 2 Local/Remote policy to use this VPN tunnel.

By default, "Use Policy Route to control dynamic IPSec rules" is enabled, so dynamic VPN routes will be integrated to the Site-to-Site VPN routes.

If you disable this option "Use Policy Route to control dynamic IPSec rules",

dynamic VPN routes will be moved to have higher priority in the routing priority table.



1.9.1. Application Scenario



USG is placed at the HQ, local subnet: 192.168.1.0/24. Remote security gateway ZyWALL 70 local subnet: 192.168.4.0/24. USG and remote security gateway build IPSec VPN tunnel.

1.9.2.Configuration Steps

On the USG ZyWALL:

Step1. Go to Configuration > VPN > IPSec VPN > VPN Gateway, add VPN gateway (Phase 1) rule.



/PN Cor	nection	VPN Gateway Concentrator				
Configu	uration					
0	Add 📝 Edi	t 💼 Remove 💡 Activate 💡 Inactiv	ate 🛛 📴 Object Reference			
#	Status	Name	My address	Secure Gateway	VPN Connection	
1	P	Default_L2TP_VPN_GW	■wan1	0.0.0, 0.0.0.0	Default_L2TP_VPN_C	onnection
2	9	to_70	■ wan1	172.25.27.99, 0.0.0.0	to_70	
14	4 Page	1 of 1 🕨 🕅 Show 50 🔽 item	s			Displaying 1 - 2 of 2

Step2. Go to Configuration > VPN > IPSec VPN > VPN Connection, add VPN Connection (Phase 2) rule.

VPN Co	nnection	/PN Gateway Concentrator				
Global	Setting					
🔽 U	se Policy Route to	o control dynamic IPSec rules				
📄 Iç	gnore "Don't Frag	ment" setting in packet header 🔋 !				
Configu	uration					
0	Add 📝 Edit 👖	🖥 Remove 🏾 💡 Activate 🖓 Inacti	vate 🚷 Connect 🚷 Disconnect ा 🔤 Obj	ect Reference		
#	Status	Name	VPN Gateway	Encapsulation	Algorithm	Policy
1	9 Gs	Default_L2TP_VPN_Connection	Default_L2TP_VPN_GW	TRANSPORT	3DES/SHA 3DES/MD5 DES/SHA	1
2	💡 🛞	to_70	to_70	TUNNEL	DES/SHA	LAN1_SUBNET/subnet_70
14	4 Page 1	of 1 > > Show 50 - ite	ms			Displaying 1 - 2 of 2

On the ZyWALL 70:

Go to Security > VPN, add VPN phase1 and phse2 rules.

Rules (IK	E) ¥PN Rules (Manual) S <i>i</i>	A Monitor	Global Setti	ng			
VPN R	ules							
		Local Network	My 2		Internet VPN Tunnel	Remote Gateway	Remote Network	
# #	VPN Rules							*
■ 1	to_200	(\$\$172.25.27	7.99	\$172	.25.27.98	B î	485 1
	<u>Υ</u> to_200		()) 192	2.168.4.0 / 255.	255.255.0 🛞	192.168.1.0 / 255.2	255.255.0 🕅 📝 👔 隆	3

Establish the tunnel.

VPN C	onnection	VPN Gateway	Concentrator					
Globa	l Setting							
V	Use Policy Rou	ute to control dynami	c IPSec rules					
	Ignore "Don't	Fragment" setting in	packet header 🔋					
Confi	guration							
0	Add 📝 Edi	it 🍵 Remove 💡	Activate 💡 Inacti	vate 🚷 Connect 🚷 Disconnect	t ा 🕞 Object Reference			
#	Status	Name		VPN Gateway	Encapsulation	Algorithm	Policy	
1	9 🗞	Default_L2T	P_VPN_Connection	Default_L2TP_VPN_GW	TRANSPORT	3DES/SHA 3DES/MD5 DES/SHA	1	
2	ଡ୍ଡ 🙈	to_70		to_70	TUNNEL	DES/SHA	LAN1_SUBNET/asubnet_70	
14	4 Page	1 of 1 🕨 🕅	Show 50 🗸 ite	ms			Displaying 1 - 2 d	of 2

Traffic can go through this tunnel.

C:\Documents and Settings\Administrator>ipconfig
Windows IP Configuration
Ethernet adapter Local Area Connection:
Connection-specific DNS Suffix .:
IP Address 192.168.1.33
Subnet Mask 255.255.255.0
Default Gateway : 192.168.1.1
Ethernet adapter 本地连接:
Media State Media disconnected
C:\Documents and Settings\Administrator>ping 192.168.4.33
Pinging 192.168.4.33 with 32 bytes of data:
Reply from 192.168.4.33: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=126
Reply from 192.168.4.33: bytes=32 time=2ms TTL=126
Reply from 192.168.4.33: bytes=32 time=2ms TTL=126
Reply from 192.168.4.33: bytes=32 time=2ms TTL=126
Ping statistics for 192.168.4.33:
Packets: Sent = 4. Received = 4. Lost = 0 (0% loss).
Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
Minimum = 2ms, Maximum = 3ms, Average = 2ms

1.10. One to One NAT Link Fail Over

1.10.1. Network Scenario

In some cases, network administrator may want to make sure his/her intranet server always available from outside.

In the scenario below, WAN1 is connected to ISP1, and WAN2 is connected to ISP2.

WAN1: 200.0.0.1. Non-interface IP: 200.0.0.4

WAN2: 200.0.1.1. Non-interface IP: 200.0.1.4

Requirements:

- Outside clients can access the intranet server 192.168.1.33 via both WAN1 and WAN2 from the non-interface IP, performing load balance for the server access traffic between WAN1 and WAN2.
- In case WAN1 fails, the intranet server still can be accessed via WAN2.
- The source address of the outgoing traffic initiated from the server will be mapped to the non-interface IP.



1.10.2. Configuration Steps

Step1. Configure WAN1 and WAN2 IP addresses from Configuration > Network > Interface > Ethernet.

Port Rol	e Ethernet	PPP Cellular	WLAN VLAN Bridge	Auxiliary Trunk	
nfia	ration				
		•		-	
<u>/</u> E	Edit 🔳 Remove	V Activate W Ina	activate 🧤 Create Virtual Interfac	e 🛛 📑 Object Reference	
#	Status	Name	IP Address		Mask
1	@	wan1	STATIC 200.0.0.1		255.255.255.0
2	@	wan2	STATIC 200.0.1.1		255.255.255.0
3	9	opt	STATIC 192.168.5.1		255.255.255.0
4	@	lan1	STATIC 192.168.1.1		255.255.255.0
5	9	lan2	STATIC 192.168.2.1		255.255.255.0
6	9	ext-wian	STATIC 10.59.0.1		255.255.255.0
7	9	dmz	STATIC 192.168.3.1		255.255.255.0

Step2. Go to Configuration > Network > NAT. Add two NAT 1:1 rules.

Enable Rule				
Rule Name:	server_primary			
ort Mapping Type				
Classification:	Virtual Server	1:1 NAT	Many 1:1 NAT	
apping Rule				
Incoming Interface:	wan1	~		
Original IP:	User Defined	~		
User-Defined Original IP:	200.0.0.4	(IP Address)		
Mapped IP:	User Defined	~		
User-Defined Mapped IP:	192.168.1.33	(IP Address)		
Port Mapping Type:	Service	~		
Original Service:	FTP	▼ TCP, 20 - 21		
Mapped Service:	FTP	▼ TCP, 20 - 21		
elated Settings				



Rule Name:	server_backup			
ort Mapping Type				
Classification:	Virtual Server	1:1 NAT	Many 1:1 NAT	
apping Rule				
Incoming Interface:	wan2	~		
Original IP:	User Defined	~		
User-Defined Original IP:	200.0.1.4	(IP Address)		
Mapped IP:	User Defined	*		
User-Defined Mapped IP:	192.168.1.33	(IP Address)		
Port Mapping Type:	Service	*		
Original Service:	FTP	▼ TCP, 20 - 21		
Mapped Service:	FTP	▼ TCP, 20 - 21		
elated Settings				

Below is the NAT rule summary:

0	🛇 Add 📝 Edit 🃋 Remove 💡 Activate 😡 Inactivate								
#	Status	Name	Mapping Type	Interface	Original IP	Mapped IP	Protocol	Original Port	Mapped Port
1	@	server_primary	1:1 NAT	■wan1	200.0.0.4	192.168.1.33	top	■FTP	<pre>FTP</pre>
2	@	server_backup	1:1 NAT	■wan2	200.0.1.4	192.168.1.33	tcp	■FTP	■FTP
14	✓ ✓ Page 1 of 1 ▷ ▷ Show 50 ♥ items Displaying 1 - 2 of 2								

Please note that after the two NAT 1:1 rules are added, system will automatically generate two 1:1 routing rules as below:

Source: 192.168.1.33 (server IP)| Destination: any| Next hop: wan1

Source: 192.168.1.33 (server IP)| Destination: any| Next hop: wan2

To prevent the traffic from the server to any always match the first 1:1 routing rule,

we need to add one policy route to over write these two 1:1 routings.

Step3. Go to Configuration > Network > Interface > Trunk, add one customized WAN trunk.

Port Role Ethernet PPP Cellular WLAN VLAN Bridge Auxiliary Trunk
Show Advanced Settings
Configuration
🕢 Enable Link Sticking 🚦
Timeout: 300 (30-600 seconds) 🚦
Default WAN Trunk
Default Trunk Selection
SYSTEM_DEFAULT_WAN_TRUNK
💿 User Configured Trunk_oust 🗸
User Configuration
S Add Edit i Remove 🔚 Object Reference



Name: trunk_cust							
Load Balancing Algorithm: Least Load First							
📀 Add 🛃 Edit 🍵 Remove 📣			3				
#	Member	Mode	Ingress Bandwidth	Egress Bandwidth			
1	wan1	Active	1048576 kpbs	1048576 kpbs			
2 wan2 Active 1048576 kpbs 1048576 kpbs							
	Image:						

Step4. Go to Configuration > Network > Routing, add one policy route as below: Source: 192.168.1.33(server)| Destination: any| Next hop: <the newly added WAN trunk>| SNAT: None.

٢	🐼 Add 📝 Edit 🍟 Remove 💡 Activate 💡 Inactivate 📣 Move											
# -	Status	User	Schedule	Incoming	Source	Destination	DSCP Code	Service	Next-Hop	DSCP Marking	SNAT	BWM
1	9	any	none	any	■ftp_svr	any	any	any	<pre>■trunk_cust</pre>	preserve	none	0
14	4 Page	1 of 1	Sho	w 50 🔻 item	s						C)isplaying 1 - 1 of 1

Please not that we set the SNAT to be None, because we still need the 1:1 NAT mapping to translate the server's outgoing traffic source address.

1.11. Accessing IPSec VPN Peer Subnet From SSL

VPN Clients

1.11.1. Application Scenario

USG ZyWALL is placed as the HQ gateway. Branch office builds IPSec VPN tunnel to HQ office. Local subnets of branch office and HQ office can communicate via the IPSec VPN tunnel.

SSL VPN client builds SSL VPN full tunnel to HQ to access HQ local subnet resources. Besides, the SSL VPN client also wants to access Brach office local resources first via SSL VPN full tunnel to HQ, then via the IPSec VPN tunnel to branch office.





Let's assume the IP information is as below: HQ office: WAN: 172.25.27.126 LAN: 192.168.1.0/24 SSL VPN range: 10.0.0.1~10.0.0.10 Branch office: WAN: 172.25.27.99 LAN: 192.168.10.0/24

1.11.2. Configuration Steps

Configuration varies when the branch security gateway is a USG ZyWALL and when it's a ZyNOS ZyWALL (policy based). We will discuss the two situations below:

1.11.2.1. When Branch is a USG ZyWALL

On HQ USG:

Step1. Go to Configuration > Object > Address, add two address objects. One is ssl_pool (range 10.0.0.1~10.0.0.10), the other is branch office subnet subnet_branch(192.168.10.0/24)

Addres	Address Group					
Config	onfiguration					
٢	Add 📝 Edit 🍵 Remove ा 📴 Object Reference					
#	Name 🔺	Туре	Address			
1	DMZ_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	dmz-192.168.3.0/24			
2	EXT_WLAN_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	ext-wlan-10.59.0.0/24			
3	LAN1_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	lan1-192.168.1.0/24			
4	LAN2_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	lan2-192.168.2.0/24			
5	WLAN-1-1_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	wlan-1-1-10.59.1.0/24			
6	ssi_pool	RANGE	10.0.0.1-10.0.0.10			
7	subnet_branch	SUBNET	192.168.10.0/24			

All contents copyright (c) 2010 ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

Step2. Go to Configuration > Object > User/Group, add SSL VPN user account, e.g. "test".

User Gro	up Setting	
Configuration		
🗿 Add 🏼	🕴 Edit 🍵 Remove 🖪 Object Reference	
# 🔺	User Name	Description
1	admin	Administration account
2	idap-users	External LDAP Users
3	radius-users	External RADIUS Users
4	ad-users	External AD Users
5	test	Local User

Step3. Go to Configuration > VPN > SSL VPN > Access Privilege, add one SSL VPN rule.

Enable Network Extension (full tunnel).

In the Network List, make sure the subnet_branch object (192.168.10.0) is selected.

Edit Access Policy		lear Oroun	
🖞 Create new Object 👻			
Configuration			
Enable Policy			
Name:	test		
Join SSL_VPN Zone			
Description:	New Create	(Optional)	
Clean browser cache wher	n user logs out 🔋		
User/Group			
Selectable User/Group Obj === Object ==	ects 50	elected User/Group Objects === Object ===	
admin	te 🕞	est	
Idap-users	•		
radius-users			
adusers			and the second secon
etwork Extension (Optional)		
Advisers))		
etwork Extension (Optional Enable Network Extension Assign IP Pool:	ss_pool	RANGE 10.0.0.1-10.0.0.10	an a
etwork Extension (Optional Extension Coptional Content of the second s	ssl_pool	RANGE 10.0.0.1-10.0.0.10	
Advigers Adv	ssl_pool	RANGE 10.0.0.1-10.0.0.10	an a
Advisers Advise	ssl_pool none none	RANGE 10.0.0.1-10.0.0.10	
Advisers Advise	ssl_pool none none none	RANGE 10.0.0.1-10.0.0.10	an a



Step4. Go to Configuration > VPN > IPSec VPN > VPN Gateway, add phase1 rule to branch office.

VPN Cor	N Connection VPN Gateway Concentrator							
Config	onfiguration							
0	Add 📝 Edi	it 🍵 Remove 💡 Activate 💡 Inac	ivate 🛛 📴 Object Reference					
#	Status	Name	My address	Secure Gateway	VPN Connection			
1	B	Default_L2TP_VPN_GW	■ wan1	0.0.0.0, 0.0.0.0	Default_L2TP_VPN_Connection			
2	2 💡 to branch a wani 172.25.27.99,0.0.0. to branch							
14								

Go to Configuration > VPN > IPSec VPN > VPN Connection, add corresponding phase2 rule to branch office. Local/Remote policy: 192.168.1.0/192.168.10.0

VPN Co	nnection	VPN Gateway Concentrator							
Global	ubal Setting								
V L	se Policy Route t	o control dynamic IPSec rules							
- I	nore "Don't Frag	gment" setting in packet header 🔋							
Config	ıration								
	Add 📝 Edit 🏌	👕 Remove 💡 Activate 💡 Inacti	vate 🚷 Connect 🚷 Disconnect 🔚 C	bject Reference					
#	Status	Name	VPN Gateway	Encapsulation	Algorithm	Policy			
1	9 🚱	Default_L2TP_VPN_Connection	Default_L2TP_VPN_GW	TRANSPORT	3DES/SHA 3DES/MD5 DES/SHA	1			
2	2 9 🚱 to_branch to_branch TUNNEL DES/SHA aLAN1_SUBNET/asubnet_branch								
14	Image: The second sec								

Step5. Go to Configuration > Network > Routing > Policy Route, add one policy route to route the SSL VPN traffic (sent from SSL VPN client to the branch office local subnet) to the IPSec VPN tunnel to_branch. Source: ssl_pool (10.0.0.1~10.0.0.10) Destination: subnet_branch (192.168.10.0/24) Next Hop: IPSec VPN tunnel to_branch SNAT: none

Poli	icy R	oute	Static Ro	oute RIP	OSPF						
🔲 Si	now i	Advanced :	5ettings								
BW	M G	obal Sett	ing								
5	/ Er	able BWM									
Cor	nfigu	ration									
	4 ن	vdd 📝 E	dit 🍵 R	emove <table-cell> Activ</table-cell>	vate 💡 Inactiv	rate 🔊 Move					
	#										
	1 🤪 any none any assigned any any to branch preserve none 0										
	1	🔄 Page	1 of 1	L 🕨 🕅 She	ow 50 🗸 iten	ns				D	isplaying 1 - 1 of 1

On branch office USG:

ZyXEL

Step1. Go to Configuration > Object > Address, add two address objects. One is subnet_HQ (192.168.1.0/24), the other is ssl_pool (10.0.0.1~10.0.0.10).

Addres	Address Group					
Config	nfiguration					
	Add 📝 Edit 🍵 Remove 🔚 Object Reference					
#	Name 🔺	Туре	Address			
1	DMZ_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	dmz-192.168.3.0/24			
2	EXT_WLAN_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	ext-wlan-10.59.0.0/24			
3	LAN1_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	lan1-192.168.10.0/24			
4	LAN2_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	lan2-192.168.2.0/24			
5	WLAN-1-1_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	wlan-1-1-10.59.1.0/24			
6	ssl_pool	RANGE	10.0.0.1-10.0.0.10			
7	subnet_HQ	SUBNET	192.168.1.0/24			
14	I Page 1 of 1 ▶ ▶ Show 50 ▼ items		Displaying 1 - 7 of 7			

Step2. Go to Configuration > VPN > IPSec VPN > VPN Gateway, add one phase1 rule to HQ.

VPN Cor	nnection	VPN Gateway Concentrator			
Config	uration				
0	Add 📝 Edi	: 🎁 Remove 💡 Activate 💡 Inactivate 📭	Object Reference		
#	Status	Name	My address	Secure Gateway	VPN Connection
1	- G	Default_L2TP_VPN_GW	■wan1	0.0.0.0, 0.0.0.0	Default_L2TP_VPN_Connection
2	@	to_HQ	¤wan1	172.25.27.126, 0.0.0.0	
14	I Page 1	l of 1 🕨 🕅 Show 50 🔽 items			Displaying 1 - 2 of 2

Go to Configuration > VPN > IPSec VPN > VPN Connection, add corresponding phase2 rule to HQ. Local/Remote policy: 192.168.10.0/192.168.1.0.

VPN	Conr	Nection VP	N Gateway Concentrator				
Glob	al Se	etting					
1	Use	Policy Route to	control dynamic IPSec rules				
	Ign	ore "Don't Fragm	ent" setting in packet header 🔋 👔				
Conf	ìgur	ation					
6	Ad	id 📝 Edit 🍵	Remove 🥥 Activate 😡 Inacti	vate 🚷 Connect 🚱 Disconnect 📴 Obje	ect Reference		
#		Status	Name	VPN Gateway	Encapsulation	Algorithm	Policy
1		9 🚱	Default_L2TP_VPN_Connection	Default_L2TP_VPN_GW	TRANSPORT	3DES/SHA 3DES/MD5 DES/SHA	1
2		og 🚱	to_HQ	to_HQ	TUNNEL	DES/SHA	LAN1_SUBNET/a subnet_HQ
	4 4	Page 1 c	of 1 🕨 🕨 Show 50 🗸 ite	ms			Displaying 1 - 2 of 2

Step3. Go to Configuration > Network > Routing > Policy Route, add one policy route to route the SSL VPN traffic (from local subnet to the SSL VPN client) back to the IPSec VPN tunnel.

Source: LAN1_Subnet (192.168.10.0/24) Destination: ssl_pool (10.0.0.1~10.0.0.10) Next Hop: IPSec VPN tunnel to_HQ SNAT: none



Policy	Route	Static Ro	ute RIP	OSPF									
III Show	Advanced	Settings											
BWM	ilobal Set	ting											
V E	nable BWN	1											
Config	uration												
٢	Add 📝	Edit 🍵 Re	emove 🧕 Activ	vate 😨 Inactiv	vate 📣 Move								
# _	Status	User	Schedule	Incoming	Source	Destination	DSCP Code	Service	Next-Hop	DSCP Marking	SNAT	BWM	
1	9	any	none	any	LAN1_SUBNET	ssl_pool	any	any	to_HQ	preserve	none	0	
14	4 Page	e 1 of 1	She	ow 50 🗸 iten	ns							Displaying 1 - 1 of 1	

After all the settings on HQ and branch USG, user can verify the result. Dial up the IPSec VPN tunnel.

O A	vdd 📝 Edit 🍵	Remove 🢡 Activate 💡 Inacti	vate 🚷 Connect 🚷 Disconnect 📴 Obje	ct Reference		
#	Status	Name	VPN Gateway	Encapsulation	Algorithm	Policy
1	88	Default_L2TP_VPN_Connection	Default_L2TP_VPN_GW	TRANSPORT	3DES/SHA 3DES/MD5 DES/SHA	1
2	💡 😪	to_HQ	to_HQ	TUNNEL	DES/SHA	LAN1_SUBNET/4 subnet_HQ
14	🖣 🛛 Page 🚺 o	f 1 🕨 🕅 Show 50 🔽 ite	ms			Displaying 1 - 2 of 2

SSL client builds a full tunnel to the HQ USG.

		ZyWALL SecuExtender	r Status
Enter User Name/Pas User Name: Password: One-Time Password: (max. 31 alphanumeric,	test (Optional) printable characters and no spaces)	Connection Status SecuExtender IP Address: DNS Server 1: DNS Server 2: WINS Server 1: WINS Server 2: Network 1: Network 1: Network 2: Network 3: Network 4:	: 10.0.01 0.0.00 0.0.00 192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0 192.168.2.0/255.255.255.0 192.168.10.0/255.255.255.0 Not configured
	Login SSL VPN	Activity Connection Time 00 Transmitted 4,5 Received 4	J0:04:13 .983 Bytes 39 Packs 496 Bytes 8 Packs

The SSL VPN client can access both the HQ USG local resources 192.168.1.0/24, 192.168.2.0/24, and the branch office USG local resources 192.168.10.0/24.



PPP_adapter_{567A1C90-B4A8-4FE0-B369-1B773853884A}: Connection-specific DNS Suffix . : Default Gateway C:\Documents and Settings\Administrator>ping 192.168.1.1 Pinging 192.168.1.1 with 32 bytes of data: Reply from 192.168.1.1: bytes=32 time=5ms TTL=64 Reply from 192.168.1.1: bytes=32 time=5ms TTL=64 Ping statistics for 192.168.1.1: Packets: Sent = 2, Received = 2, Lost = 0 (0% loss), Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds: Minimum = 5ms, Maximum = 5ms, Average = 5ms Control-C C:\Documents and Settings\Administrator>ping 192.168.2.1 Pinging 192.168.2.1 with 32 bytes of data: Reply from 192.168.2.1: bytes=32 time=5ms TTL=64 Ping statistics for 192.168.2.1: Packets: Sent = 1, Received = 1, Lost = 0 (0% loss), Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds: Minimum = 5ms, Maximum = 5ms, Average = 5ms Control-C C:\Documents and Settings\Administrator>ping 192.168.10.33 Pinging 192.168.10.33 with 32 bytes of data: Reply from 192.168.10.33: bytes=32 time=14ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.10.33: bytes=32 time=10ms TTL=125 Ping statistics for 192.168.10.33: Packets: Sent = 2, Received = 2, Lost = 0 (0% loss), Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds: Minimum = 10ms, Maximum = 14ms, Average = 12ms Control-C C:\Documents and Settings\Administrator>_

1.11.2.2. When Branch is a ZyNOS ZyWALL

On the HQ USG:

Step1. Go to Configuration > Object > Address, add two address objects. One is ssl_pool (range 10.0.0.1~10.0.0.10), the other is branch office subnet subnet_branch(192.168.10.0/24)

Addre	ss Address Group		
Config	juration		
٢	Add 📝 Edit 🍵 Remove 📴 Object Reference		
#	Name 🔺	Туре	Address
1	DMZ_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	dmz-192.168.3.0/24
2	EXT_WLAN_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	ext-wlan-10.59.0.0/24
3	LAN1_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	lan1-192.168.1.0/24
4	LAN2_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	lan2-192.168.2.0/24
5	WLAN-1-1_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	wlan-1-1-10.59.1.0/24
6	ssl_pool	RANGE	10.0.0.1-10.0.0.10
7	subnet_branch	SUBNET	192.168.10.0/24

All contents copyright (c) 2010 ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

Step2. Go to Configuration > Object > User/Group, add SSL VPN user account, e.g. "test".

User Gro	up Setting	
Configuration		
🗿 Add 🏼	🕴 Edit 🍵 Remove 🖪 Object Reference	
# 🔺	User Name	Description
1	admin	Administration account
2	idap-users	External LDAP Users
3	radius-users	External RADIUS Users
4	ad-users	External AD Users
5	test	Local User

Step3. Go to Configuration > VPN > SSL VPN > Access Privilege, add one SSL VPN rule.

Enable Network Extension (full tunnel).

In the Network List, make sure the subnet_branch object (192.168.10.0) is selected.

Edit Access Policy		
🛛 Create new Object 👻		
Configuration		
conngaración		
🔽 Enable Policy		
Name:	test	
Join SSL_VPN Zone		
Description:	New Create	(Optional)
🔲 Clean browser cache	e when user logs out 🔋	
User/Group		
Selectable User/Grou === Object	p Objects t ===	Selected User/Group Objects === Object ===
admin		test
Idap-users		
radius-users	6	
adrusers	and the second sec	
etwork Extension (Op)	ional)	
etwork Extension (Opt	cional) nsion ssl_pool	✓ CONTRACT CONTRACT CONTRACT CONTRACT ✓ RANGE 10.0.0.1-10.0.0.10
etwork Extension (Opt Enable Network Extension) Enable Network Extension Additional Server 1:	ional) ssl_pool none	RANGE 10.0.0.1-10.0.0.10
Advisers	cional) nsion ssl_pool none none	RANGE 10.0.0.1-10.0.0.10
Advisers	ional) nsion ssl_pool none none none	RANGE 10.0.0.1-10.0.0.10
etwork Extension (Opt Extension Copt Extension (Opt Enable Network Extension DNS Server 1: DNS Server 2: WINS Server 1: WINS Server 2:	ional) nsion ssl_pool none none none none	RANGE 10.0.0.1-10.0.0.10
advusers tetwork Extension (Opt C Enable Network Extension) DNS Server 1: DNS Server 2: WINS Server 1: WINS Server 2: Network List	ional) nsion ssl_pool none none none none	RANGE 10.0.0.1-10.0.0.10
advusers tetwork Extension (Opl C Enable Network Extension (Opl C Enable Network Extension (Opl C Enable Network Extension (Opl DNS Server 1: DNS Server 1: WINS Server 1: WINS Server 2: Network List Selectable Address Ot Selectable Address Ot	ional) nsion ssl_pool none none none none	RANGE 10.0.0.1-10.0.0.10
advusers tetwork Extension (Opl Comparison of the first	ional) nsion ssl_pool none none none none	RANGE 10.0.0.1-10.0.0.10
advusers	ional) nsion ssl_pool none none none	RANGE 10.0.0.1-10.0.0.10 Selected Address Objects LAN1_SUBNET LAN1_SUBNET Subnet branch
advusers Advuse	ional) nsion ssl_pool none none none	RANGE 10.0.0.1-10.0.0.10



Step4. Go to Configuration > VPN > IPSec VPN > VPN Gateway, add phase1 rule to branch office.

VPN Cor	nnection	VPN Gateway Concentrator				
Config	uration					
٢	Add 📝 Edi	t 🍵 Remove 💡 Activate 💡 Inactivat	e ा Object Reference			
#	Status	Name	My address	Secure Gateway	VPN Connection	
1	@	Default_L2TP_VPN_GW	■ wan1	0.0.0.0, 0.0.0.0	Default_L2TP_VPN_Con	nection
2	@	to_branch	¤ wan1	172.25.27.99, 0.0.0.0	to_branch	
14	4 Page	1 of 1 🕨 🕅 Show 50 🗸 items				Displaying 1 - 2 of 2

Go to Configuration > VPN > IPSec VPN > VPN Connection, add two phase2 rules to branch office.

First rule for HQ to branch, Local/Remote policy: 192.168.1.0/192.168.10.0 Second rule for ssl vpn client to branch, Local/Remote policy: 10.0.0.1~10.0.0.10/192.168.10.0

VPN Cor	nnection	PN Gateway Concentrator				
Global 9	5etting					
Vi Us	se Policy Route to nore "Don't Fragn	control dynamic IPSec rules				
Configu	iration					
	Add 📝 Edit 🍵	🛚 Remove Activate 💡 Inacti	vate 😪 Connect 🚷 Disconnect	📑 Object Reference		
#	Status	Name	VPN Gateway	Encapsulation	Algorithm	Policy
1	9 🚱	Default_L2TP_VPN_Connection	Default_L2TP_VPN_GW	TRANSPORT	3DES/SHA 3DES/MD5 DES/SHA	1
2	💡 🛞	hq_to_branch	to_branch	TUNNEL	DES/SHA	LAN1_SUBNET/= subnet_branch
3	💡 🗞	ssl_to_branch	to_branch	TUNNEL	DES/SHA	ssl_pool/subnet_branch
14	4 Page 1	of 1 🗼 🕨 Show 50 🔽 ite	ms			Displaying 1 - 3 of 3

On branch office ZyNOS ZyWALL:

Go to Security > VPN > VPN rules(IKE), add phase 1 rule to HQ.

Rules (IKE) VPN Rule	es (Manual) SA Monit	or Global Set	ting		
VPN Rules					
	Local Network	Ny ZyWALL	Internet VPN Tunnol Remot	Remote Network	
🛨 # VPN Rules					*
■ 1 to_hq	1 7	2.25.27.99	\$\$172.25.27.126	e î	\$ <u>\$</u>

Add two phase2 rules.

One is for traffic from branch to HQ. Local/Remote policy: 192.168.10.0/192.168.1.0 The other is for traffic from branch to ssl vpn client. Local/Remote policy: 192.168.10.0/10.0.0.1~10.0.0.10.

nes (II	KE) VP	re kales (Hallaal)							
VPN F	Rules								
		Loc	al	~	Internet		Rome	to	
		Netw	ork		VPN Tunnel		Netwo	ork	
				title and the second		FILL WWW.			
		~	No.		- AN			See.	
		~		My ZyWALL	un	Remote Gateway	~		
		~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~		My ZyWALL	· · · · ·	Remote Gateway			
<b>•</b> #	VPN Rul	es		My ZyWALL		Remote Gateway	~~~		*
<b>•</b> #	VPN Rul	es	►172	Niy ZyWALL	©1722	Remote Gateway	~~~	्र हो से	* *
∎ #	VPN Rul to_hq	es	Sint 2 = 172.	My ZyWALL .25.27.99	∞172.:	Remote Gataway 25.27.126		e ()	& <b>"</b>
∎ #	VPN Rul to_hq ¥	es branch_to_hq		My ZyWALL .25.27.99 192.168.10.0 / 255.255.255.0	©172.:	Remota Gateway 25.27.126 192.168.1.0 / 255.255	5.255.0 <b>J</b>	r Fi Fita	8° 88
• #	VPN Rul	es branch_to_hq		.25.27.99 192.168.10.0 / 255.255.0 192.168.10.0 /	©172.:	Remote Gateway 25.27.126 192.168.1.0 / 255.255	5.255.0 <b>J</b>	e' () e' () (2) e' () (2)	& <b>*</b>

After the settings above are done on both HQ USG and branch ZyNOS ZyWALL, we can verify whether the SSL VPN client can access the remote local resources.

SSL client builds a full tunnel to the HQ USG.

		ZyWALL SecuExtender	Status
Enter User Name/Pa User Name: Password: One-Time Password: ( max. 31 alphanumeric	test (Optional) , printable characters and no spaces )	Connection Status SecuExtender IP Address: DNS Server 1: DNS Server 2: WINS Server 1: WINS Server 2: Network 1: Network 1: Network 3: Network 3: Network 4:	10.0.0.1 0.0.0 0.0.0 0.0.0 192.168.1.0/255.255.0 192.168.2.0/255.255.0 192.168.2.0/255.255.0 192.168.10.0/255.255.0 Not configured
	Login SSL VPN	Connection Time 00 Transmitted 4,9 Received 4	:04:13 83 Bytes 39 Packets 96 Bytes 8 Packets

The SSL VPN client can access both the HQ USG local resources 192.168.1.0/24, 192.168.2.0/24, and the branch office USG local resources 192.168.10.0/24.



PPP_adapter_{567A1C90-B4A8-4FE0-B369-1B773853884A}; Connection-specific DNS Suffix . : Default Gateway . . . . . . . . . . C:\Documents and Settings\Administrator>ping 192.168.1.1 Pinging 192.168.1.1 with 32 bytes of data: Reply from 192.168.1.1: bytes=32 time=5ms TTL=64 Reply from 192.168.1.1: bytes=32 time=5ms TTL=64 Ping statistics for 192.168.1.1: Packets: Sent = 2, Received = 2, Lost = 0 (0% loss), Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds: Minimum = 5ms, Maximum = 5ms, Average = 5ms Control-C ۲Ċ C:\Documents and Settings\Administrator>ping 192.168.2.1 Pinging 192.168.2.1 with 32 bytes of data: Reply from 192.168.2.1: bytes=32 time=5ms TTL=64 Ping statistics for 192.168.2.1: Packets: Sent = 1, Received = 1, Lost = 0 (0% loss), Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds: Minimum = 5ms, Maximum = 5ms, Average = 5ms Control-C C: Documents and Settings Administrator>ping 192.168.10.33 Pinging 192.168.10.33 with 32 bytes of data: Reply from 192.168.10.33: bytes=32 time=14ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.10.33: bytes=32 time=10ms TTL=125 Ping statistics for 192.168.10.33: Packets: Sent = 2, Received = 2, Lost = 0 (0% loss), Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds: Minimum = 10ms, Maximum = 14ms, Average = 12ms Control-C °C C:\Documents and Settings\Administrator>_

# 2. Deploying EPS

## 2.1. EPS Introduction

EPS is short for Endpoint Security.

Endpoint refers to PCs, laptops, handhelds, etc. Endpoint Security is a security concept that assumes each endpoint is responsible for its own security. Network administrator can set restrict policies to allow only the endpoints that comply with its defined security requirements to access network resources. The endpoint security requirement items may contain current anti-virus state, personal firewall, and operating system patch level, etc.

For example, a local endpoint doesn't have any anti-virus software installed. If it surfs internet, there's a high risk that it may be infected with viruses. Then the viruses may be propagated among the entire local network.

Another example is in SSL VPN case. If the SSL VPN client doesn't have anti-virus software installed, when it accesses the HQ local resources through SSL VPN tunnel, it may propagate the virus to HQ local subnet.

To prevent such undesired situation, the network administrator can use EPS checking to restrict endpoints' network access privileges. Only the compliant endpoint can get authority to access certain network resources.

#### 2.1.1.EPS --- WebGUI

Go to Configuration > Object > Endpoint Security to create EPS objects, which can later be used in User Aware and SSL VPN applications.

Endpo	int Security (EPS)		
EPS O	bject Summary		
٢	Add 📝 Edit 🍵 Remove 📴 Obje	ect Reference	
#	Object Name	Description	Endpoint Operating System

Below is the EPS editing page.

For the Passing Criterion, you can choose "Endpoint must comply with at least one checking item", or "Endpoint must comply with all checking items".

If you choose "Endpoint must comply with at least one checking item", then the client can pass the EPS checking as long as it matches at least one checking items that listed

below the Passing Criterion.

If you choose "Endpoint must comply with all checking items", then the client must comply with all the checking items listed below to pass the EPS checking.

ntern	et_windows_check		
m			
	ntern	nternet_windows_check	nternet_windows_check

The first checking item is Operating System. You can select Windows, Linux, Mac OSX, and other OS.

If you choose OS as Windows, you can define the OS checking item in detail for its version and service pack.

**Windows Version** includes Windows 2000, Server 2003, XP, Vista, Windows 7, Server 2008 and Server 2008 R2.

**Endpoint must update to Windows Service Pack-** We can enter the minimum Windows service pack number the user's computer must have installed. The user's computer must have this service pack or higher.

Checking Item - Operating System		
Endpoint Operating System:	Windows	·
Window Version:	Windows	
Endpoint must undate to Windows Service Pack:	Linux	for at least SP2 update, black for doo't care)
Endpoint mast aparts to windows bervice Facts.	Mac OSX	Tor acrease or 2 apaate, blank for don't carey
	Others	

The other checking items vary according to the OS you selected.

If OS checking item is selected as Windows, there're additional checking items as the following:

- Windows Update and Security Patch
- Personal Firewall

Personal firewall support list

- Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2009
- Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2010
- Microsoft_Security_Center
- Windows_Firewall
- Windows_Firewall_Public



- TrendMicro_PC-Cillin_Internet_Security_v2010
- TrendMicro_PC-Cillin_Internet_Security_Pro_v2010
- Anti-Virus Software

Anti-Virus Software support list

- Kaspersky_Anti-Virus_v2009
- Kaspersky_Anti-Virus_v2010
- Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2009
- Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2010
- TrendMicro_PC-Cillin_AntiVirus_v2010
- TrendMicro_PC-Cillin_Internet_Security_v2010
- TrendMicro_PC-Cillin_Internet_Security_Pro2010
- Norton_AntiVirus, 2010
- Norton_Internet_Security, 2010
- Norton_360 Version, version 3
- Avria AntiVir Personal_v2009

Checking Item - Windows Update and Security I	Patch		
Windows Update Settings  Index of the setting of th			
Windows Security Patch that endpoint must ha	ve		
📀 Add 🍵 Remove			
# Windows Security Patch -			
◀ ◀   Page 1 of 1   ▶ ▶    Show 50	🕶 items	No dat	a to display
Example: "Windows Security Patch" : KB5682			
Checking Item - Personal Firewall			
Endpoint must have Personal Firewall installed     Available     Microsoft_Security_Center     TrendMicro_PC-cillin_Internet_Security_Pro_v2010     TrendMicro_PC-cillin_Internet_Security_v2010     Windows_Firewall     Windows_Firewall_Public	•	Allowed Personal Firewall List Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2009 Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2010	•
Charling Them - Anti-Views Software		Endpoint needs to match any of the personal firewall	
Endpoint must have Anti-Virus software installed     Available     Avira_Antivir_Personal_v2009     Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2009	<u>∧</u> ≡ →	Allowed Anti-Virus Software List Kaspersky_Anti-Virus_v2009 Kaspersky_Anti-Virus_v2010	•
Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2010 Microsoft_Security_Center Norton_360_v3	•		*

If OS checking item is selected as Linux, there're additional checking items as the



following:

- Application
  - Process that endpoint must execute
  - Process that endpoint cannot execute
- File Information

Checking Item - Operating System Linux Endpoint Operating System: ~ Checking Item - Application Process that endpoint must execute) 😳 Add 🍵 Remove # Trusted Process 🔺 No data to display [4 4 | Page 1 of 1 | ▶ ▶] | Show 50 👻 items Process that endpoint cannot execute 💿 Add 🍵 Remove # Forbidden Process 🔺 No data to display 🛛 🖣 Page 1 of 1 🕨 🕨 Show 50 👻 items

🏹 "Filename extension" is unnecessary on process check when OS type is "Windows".

Chec	Checking Item - File Information								
C	) Add 📋 Remove								
#	File Path 🔺	Operation	File Size	Operation	File Version				
14	4   Page 1 of 1   🕨 🕅   Show	w 50 💌	items			No data to display			
Exan	Example:       "File Path" : C:\Program Files\Internet Explorer\jexplore.exe       "File Size" : 1-1073741824 bytes         "File Version" : 6.0.2900.2180       "Show SU wittems								

If the OS checking item is selected as Mac OSX or Others, there's no additional checking item.

General Settings	
Object Name:	test
Description:	
Passing Criterion	
Endpoint must comply with at least one checking iter	m
Endpoint must comply with all checking items	
Checking Item - Operating System	
Endpoint Operating System:	Others 💌

#### 2.1.2.EPS --- CLI



You can use the CLI below to check your USG EPS information.

Router> show eps signature status

This command shows the current EPS signature status, including version, release date and signature numbers on your USG.



Router> show eps signature personal-firewall

This command shows current EPS signatures for personal firewall checking.

Route No.	er≻ show eps signature personal-firewall Name	Detection
1	Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2009	yes
2	Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2010	yes
3	Microsoft_Security_Center	yes
4	Windows_Firewall	yes
5	TrendMicro_PC-cillin_Internet_Security_v2010	yes
6	TrendMicro_PC-cillin_Internet_Security_Pro_v2010	yes
7	Windows_Firewall_Public	yes

Router> show eps signature anti-virus

This command shows the current EPS signatures for anti-virus program checking.

Route No.	er> show eps signature anti-virus Name	Detection
1	Norton Anti-Virus v2010	 ПО
5	Norton_Internet_Security_v2010	по
3	Norton_360_v3	по
4	Microsoft_Security_Center	yes
5	TrendMicro_PC-cillin_AntiVirus_v2010	yes
6	TrendMicro_PC-cillin_Internet_Security_v2010	yes
?	TrendMicro_PC-cillin_Internet_Security_Pro_v2010	yes
8	Avira_Antivir_Personal_v2009	по
9	Kaspersky_Anti-Virus_v2010	yes
10	Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2010	yes
11	Kaspersky_Anti-Virus_v2009	yes
15	Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2009	yes

NOTE: If the Detection status is "no", it means this EPS signature can only detect whether the software is installed, but it cannot detect whether it's active or not. If the Detection status is "yes", it means this EPS signature can detect whether the software is installed, as well as detect whether it's active or not.

#### 2.1.3. EPS Application Note

- If you want to use EPS feature, no matter in User Aware application or in SSL VPN application, you should install Java, and make sure Java is enabled in your browser.
- 2. Although EPS checking is achieved by EPS signatures, it doesn't need license. The signature is updated with firmware upgrade.

## 2.2. Deploy EPS in User Aware

To protect company network, the administrator can set Authentication Policies to restrict clients that not only pass user aware authentication, but also pass EPS checking, can reach certain network resources, such internet, or DMZ serves.

### 2.2.1. Application Scenario

The company has LAN zone and DMZ server zone. The network administrator makes restrictions as following:

Only clients that have anti-virus software installed can access the servers in DMZ zone.

Only clients that have both anti-virus software and personal firewall installed can access internet.



## 2.2.2.Configuration Steps

Step1. Go to Configuration > Object > Endpoint Security, add EPS objects.



Show Advanced Settings		
Concernal Contringer		
ierierai settings		
Object Name:	DMZ_check	
Description:		
Passing Criterion		
Endpoint must comply with at least one checking it	em	
Endpoint must comply with all checking items		
hecking Item - Operating System		
Endpoint Operating System:	Windows	×
Window Version	Windows YB	
	WINDOWS AP	
Endpoint must update to Windows Service Pack:		(ex: 2 for at least SP2 update, blank for don't care)
te die meeste werden en dete eerde meter		
Yindows Update Settings		
Endpoint must enable Windows Auto Update		
Windows Security Patch that endpoint must have		
O Add T Remove		
# )Alindows Security Patch		
# Windows Scounty Fatch =		
IA A Dage 1 of 1 b bl Show 50 w 8	tome	No data to display
◀ ◀   Page 1 of 1   ▶ ▶     Show 50 ▼ it	tems	No data to display
Image     1     Image	tems	No data to display
Image     1     of 1     Image     I	tems	No data to display
Image 1 of 1       Image 1       Show 50       Image 1         Example:       "Windows Security Patch" : KB5682         Thecking Item - Personal Firewall	tems	No data to display
Image 1 of 1       Image 1       Show 50       Image 1         Example:       "Windows Security Patch" : KB5682         Checking Item - Personal Firewall         Image Independent must have Personal Firewall installed	tems	No data to display
Image 1       of 1       Image 1       Show 50       Image 1         Example:       "Windows Security Patch" : KB5682         Checking Item - Personal Firewall         Image Endpoint must have Personal Firewall Installed         Available	tems Allowed Persona	No data to display
Image I       of I       Image I       Show 50       Image I         Example:       "Windows Security Patch" : KB5682         Checking Item - Personal Firewall         Image Endpoint must have Personal Firewall installed         Available         Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2009	tems Allowed Persona	No data to display
Image 1 of 1       Image 1       Show 50       Image i         Example:       "Windows Security Patch" : KB5682         "Windows Security Patch" : KB5682         Checking Item - Personal Firewall         Image Endpoint must have Personal Firewall installed         Available         Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2009         Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2010	Allowed Persona	No data to display
Page 1 of 1 >>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>	Allowed Persona	I Firewall List
Image I       of 1       Image I       Show 50       Image I         Example:       "Windows Security Patch" : KB5682         Checking Item - Personal Firewall       Image I       Image I         Image I       Personal Firewall       Image I       Image I         Image I       Personal Firewall       Image I       Image I       Image I         Image I       Personal Firewall       Image I       Image I <tdi< td=""><td>Allowed Persona</td><td>I Firewall List</td></tdi<>	Allowed Persona	I Firewall List
Image I       of I       Image I       Show 50       Image I         Example:       "Windows Security Patch" : KB5682         "Windows Security Patch" : KB5682         Checking Item - Personal Firewall         Image Endpoint must have Personal Firewall installed         Available         Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2009         Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2010         Microsoft_Security_Center         TrendMicro_PC-cillin_Internet_Security_v2010         TrendMicro_PC-cillin_Internet_Security_v2010	Allowed Persona	I Firewall List
Image I       of 1       Image I       Show 50       Image I         Example:       "Windows Security Patch" : KB5682         "Methods: Security Patch" : KB5682         Checking Item - Personal Firewall         Image: Endpoint must have Personal Firewall installed         Available         Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2009         Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2010         Microsoft_Security_Center         TrendMicro_PC-cillin_Internet_Security_v2010         V	Allowed Persona	I Firewall List
Page 1 of 1 1 Show 50 i   Example: "Windows Security Patch": KB5682 Checking Item - Personal Firewall Endpoint must have Personal Firewall installed Available Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2009 Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2010 Microsoft_Security_Center TrendMicro_PC-cillin_Internet_Security_Pro_v2010 TrendMicro_PC-cillin_Internet_Security_v2010 Checking Item - Anti-Virus Software	Allowed Persona	I Firewall List  to match any of the personal firewall
Image: The second s	Allowed Persona	I Firewall List
Image I       of 1       Image I       Show 50       Image I         Example:       "Windows Security Patch" : KB5682         "Hecking Item - Personal Firewall       Image I       Image I         Image I       Personal Firewall       Image I       Image I         Image I       Personal Firewall       Image I       Image I       Image I         Image I       Personal Firewall       Image I       Image I <tdi< td=""><td>Allowed Persona</td><td>I Firewall List  to match any of the personal firewall</td></tdi<>	Allowed Persona	I Firewall List  to match any of the personal firewall
Image I of I Image I Show 50 Image I   Example: "Windows Security Patch": KB5682 Endpoint must have Personal Firewall   Image Endpoint must have Personal Firewall   Image Endpoint must have Personal Firewall installed   Available   Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2009   Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2010   Microsoft_Security_Center   TrendMicro_PC-cillin_Internet_Security_v2010   TrendMicro_PC-cillin_Internet_Security_v2010   Endpoint must have Anti-Virus Software   Image Endpoint must have Anti-Virus software installed	Allowed Persona    Allowed Persona	I Firewall List  Ito match any of the personal firewall  US Software List  Dayl V2019
Image I of I Image I Show 50 Image I   Example: "Windows Security Patch" : KB5682 Ehecking Item - Personal Firewall Image I Endpoint must have Personal Firewall installed Available Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2009 Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2010 Microsoft_Security_Center TrendMicro_PC-cillin_Internet_Security_v2010 Checking Item - Anti-Virus Software Image Indpoint must have Anti-Virus software installed Available	Allowed Persona  Allowed Persona  Endpoint needs  Allowed Anti-Virr  Avira_Antivir_Perso Kasperchu Anti-Virr	I Firewall List
Image: The state of	Allowed Persona  Allowed Persona  Endpoint needs  Allowed Anti-Vir  Avira_Antivir_Persi Kaspersky_Anti-Vir Kaspersky_Anti-Vir	No data to display
Image: The state of	Allowed Persona  Allowed Persona  Endpoint needs  Allowed Anti-Virr Avira_Antivir_Persi Kaspersky_Anti-Virr Kaspersky_Anti-Virr Kaspersky_Inti-Virr	No data to display
Image: The state of	Allowed Persona Endpoint needs Endpoint needs Allowed Anti-Virr Avira_Antivir_Persona Kaspersky_Anti-Virr Kaspersky_Anti-Virr Kaspersky_Interne Kaspersky_Interne	I Firewall List It is the personal firewall Its to match any of the personal firewall Its Software List Its Software Lis
Image: The state of	Image: Second systems       Allowed Persona         Image: Second system sys	I Firewall List  It o match any of the personal firewall  US Software List  In a Software List In a Software List In a Software List  In a Software List In a Software List In a Software List In a Software L

Add EPS object that complies with internet checking requirements.



Show Advanced Settings				
anoval Cattings				
ieneral settings			7	
Object Name:	interr	net_check		
Description:				
Passing Criterion				
Endpoint must comply with at least one checking	item			
Endpoint must comply with all checking items				
hecking Item - Operating System				
Endpoint Operating System:	Wind	ows	¥	
Window Version:	Wind	ows XP	<b>v</b>	
Endpoint must update to Windows Service Pack:			(ex: 2 for at least SP2 update, blank for don't car	e)
				~,
hecking Item - Windows Update and Security Pat	ch:			
Redene Hedele Cettines				
/indows Update Settings				
Vindows Security Patch that endpoint must have				
S Add Remove				
# Windows Security Patch 🔺				
I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I         I	items		No data to displa	зу
A Page 1 of 1 > > Show 50 ~	items		No data to displa	зy
Image       1       Image       Ima	items		No data to displa	зу
A Page 1 of 1      Show 50     model     model     Show 50     model     model	items		No data to displa	зy
Page 1 of 1      Show 50     main and the second seco	items		No data to displa	зу
Image       1       Image       Ima	items		No data to displa	зу
Image       1       Image       Ima	items	Allowed Persor	No data to displa	зу
Image       1       Image       Ima	items	Allowed Persor Kaspersky_Interr	No data to displa	зу
Image       1       Image       Show       50         xample:       "Windows Security Patch" : KB5682         hecking Item - Personal Firewall         Image:       Image:         Image:       Image: </td <td>items</td> <td>Allowed Persor Kaspersky_Interr Kaspersky_Interr Microsoft Sequil</td> <td>No data to displa</td> <td>зу</td>	items	Allowed Persor Kaspersky_Interr Kaspersky_Interr Microsoft Sequil	No data to displa	зу
Image       1       Image       Show       50         xample:       "Windows Security Patch" : KB5682         hecking Item - Personal Firewall         Image:       Image:         Image:       Image: </td <td>items →</td> <td>Allowed Persor Kaspersky_Interr Kaspersky_Interr Microsoft_Securit TrendMicro_RC-ri</td> <td>No data to displa</td> <td>зу</td>	items →	Allowed Persor Kaspersky_Interr Kaspersky_Interr Microsoft_Securit TrendMicro_RC-ri	No data to displa	зу
Image       of 1       Image       Show       50         xample:       "Windows Security Patch" : KB5682         hecking Item - Personal Firewall         Image:       Endpoint must have Personal Firewall installed         Available	items	Allowed Persor Kaspersky_Interr Kaspersky_Interr Microsoft_Securit TrendMicro_PC-ci TrendMicro_PC-ci	No data to displa	зу
Page 1 of 1 P Show 50  xample: "Windows Security Patch" : KB5682  hecking Item - Personal Firewall   Endpoint must have Personal Firewall installed  Available	items	Allowed Persor Kaspersky_Interr Kaspersky_Interr Microsoft_Securit TrendMicro_PC-ci TrendMicro_PC-ci	No data to displa	зу
Image 1 of 1       Image 50         xample:       "Windows Security Patch" : KB5682         hecking Item - Personal Firewall       Image: Transmission of the second	items 	Allowed Persor Kaspersky_Intern Kaspersky_Intern Microsoft_Securit TrendMicro_PC-ci TrendMicro_PC-ci Endpoint need	No data to displation hal Firewall List het_Security_v2009 het_Security_v2010 y_Center llin_Internet_Security_Pro_v2010 llin_Internet_Security_v2010 is to match any of the personal firewall	зу
Image 1 of 1       Image 50         xample:       "Windows Security Patch" : KB5682         hecking Item - Personal Firewall       Image 50         Image 50       Endpoint must have Personal Firewall installed         Available       Image 50         hecking Item - Apti-Virus Software       Image 50	items	Allowed Persor Kaspersky_Interr Kaspersky_Interr Microsoft_Securit TrendMicro_PC-ci TrendMicro_PC-ci Endpoint need	No data to displation hal Firewall List het_Security_v2009 het_Security_v2010 y_Center llin_Internet_Security_Pro_v2010 llin_Internet_Security_v2010 is to match any of the personal firewall	зу
Image 1 of 1       Image 50         xample:       "Windows Security Patch" : KB5682         hecking Item - Personal Firewall       Image: Security Patch Personal Firewall         Image: Security Patch Personal Firewall       Image: Security Patch Personal Firewall         Image: Personal Firewall       Image: Personal Firewall         <	items	Allowed Persor Kaspersky_Interr Kaspersky_Interr Microsoft_Securit TrendMicro_PC-ci TrendMicro_PC-ci Endpoint need	No data to displate hal Firewall List het_Security_v2009 het_Security_v2010 y_Center llin_Internet_Security_Pro_v2010 llin_Internet_Security_v2010 ds to match any of the personal firewall	зу
Image 1 of 1       Image 50         xample:       "Windows Security Patch" : KB5682         hecking Item - Personal Firewall       Image: Transmission of the second	items	Allowed Persor Kaspersky_Interr Kaspersky_Interr Microsoft_Securit TrendMicro_PC-ci TrendMicro_PC-ci Endpoint need	No data to displate the firewall List the t_Security_v2009 the t_Security_v2010 y_Center llin_Internet_Security_Pro_v2010 llin_Internet_Security_v2010 is to match any of the personal firewall	зу
Image 1 of 1       Image 50         xample:       "Windows Security Patch" : KB5682         hecking Item - Personal Firewall       Image: Transmission of the second	items •	Allowed Persor Kaspersky_Interr Kaspersky_Interr Microsoft_Securit TrendMicro_PC-ci TrendMicro_PC-ci Endpoint need	No data to displate the internet Security_V2010 y_Center llin_Internet_Security_V2010 llin_Internet_Security_V2010 is to match any of the personal firewall intus Software List	зу
Image I of 1       Image I of 1         ixample:       "Windows Security Patch" : KB5682         hecking Item - Personal Firewall       Image: Transmission of the second se	items	Allowed Persor Kaspersky_Interr Kaspersky_Interr Microsoft_Securit TrendMicro_PC-ci TrendMicro_PC-ci Endpoint need Endpoint need	No data to displate hal Firewall List het_Security_v2009 het_Security_v2010 y_Center llin_Internet_Security_Pro_v2010 llin_Internet_Security_v2010 is to match any of the personal firewall is to match any of the personal firewall is to match any of the personal firewall	зу
Image in of 1       Image in of 1<	items	Allowed Persor Kaspersky_Interr Kaspersky_Interr Microsoft_Securit TrendMicro_PC-ci TrendMicro_PC-ci Endpoint need Allowed Anti-Vi Avira_Antivir_Per Kaspersky_Anti-Vi	No data to displation hal Firewall List het_Security_v2009 het_Security_v2010 y_Center llin_Internet_Security_Pro_v2010 llin_Internet_Security_v2010 is to match any of the personal firewall irus Software List irus Software List irus_v2009	зу
Image in of 1       Image in of 1         ixample:       "Windows Security Patch" : KB5682         hecking Item - Personal Firewall       Image: Security Patch in the Personal Firewall installed         Image: Provide the Personal Firewall installed       Available         hecking Item - Anti-Virus Software       Image: Personal Firewall installed         Image: Personal Firewall installed       Available         Image: Personal Firewall installed       Personal Firewall installed         Available       Personal Firewall installed	items	Allowed Persor Kaspersky_Interr Kaspersky_Interr Microsoft_Securit TrendMicro_PC-ci TrendMicro_PC-ci Endpoint need Allowed Anti-Vi Avira_Antivir_Per Kaspersky_Anti-Vi Kaspersky_Anti-Vi	No data to displate         hal Firewall List         net_Security_v2009         net_Security_v2010         y_Center         llin_Internet_Security_Pro_v2010         llin_Internet_Security_v2010         is to match any of the personal firewall         irus Software List         issonal_v2009         irus_v2010	зу
Image in of 1       Image in of 1<	items	Allowed Persor Kaspersky_Interr Kaspersky_Interr Microsoft_Securit TrendMicro_PC-ci TrendMicro_PC-ci Endpoint need Allowed Anti-Vi Avira_Antivir_Per Kaspersky_Anti-V Kaspersky_Anti-V Kaspersky_Interr	No data to displate         hal Firewall List         net_Security_v2009         net_Security_v2010         y_Center         llin_Internet_Security_Pro_v2010         llin_Internet_Security_v2010         is to match any of the personal firewall         irus Software List         irus_v2009         irus_v2010         irus_v2010         irus_v2010	у
Image I of I I Image Show 50 memory         Example:         "Windows Security Patch" : KB5682         Checking Item - Personal Firewall         Image Endpoint must have Personal Firewall installed         Available         hecking Item - Anti-Virus Software         Image Endpoint must have Anti-Virus software installed         Available	items	Allowed Persor Kaspersky_Interr Kaspersky_Interr Microsoft_Securit TrendMicro_PC-ci TrendMicro_PC-ci Endpoint need Allowed Anti-Vi Avira_Antivir_Per Kaspersky_Anti-V Kaspersky_Anti-V Kaspersky_Interr Kaspersky_Interr	No data to displate         hal Firewall List         het_Security_v2009         het_Security_v2010         y_Center         llin_Internet_Security_v2010         dis to match any of the personal firewall         irus Software List         issonal_v2009         irus_v2010         irus_v2010         irus_v2009         irus_v2010         irus_v2010         irus_v2010         irus_v2010         irus_v2010         irus_v2010         irus_v2010	зу

EPS object summary.



EP	EPS Object Summary							
🔕 Add 📝 Edit. 🃋 Remove 🔚 Object: Reference								
	#	Object Name	Description	Endpoint Operating System				
-	I	DMZ_check		windows				
:	2	internet_check		windows				
	14	I Page 1 of 1   ▶ ▶   Show	50 vitems	Displaying 1 - 2 of 2				
Ch	eckir	ng Failure Message						
E	ndpoi	nt Security checking failed. Please cont	act administrator for help.		1			

Step2. Go to Configuration > Authentication Policy, enable Authentication Policy.

Auth. Policy			
General Settings			
Enable Authentication Policy	]		

Add authentication policies for DMZ access and internet access checking.

General Settings		
👿 Enable Policy		
Description:	DMZ_access	(Optional)
User Authentication Policy	,	
Source Address:	LAN1_SUBNET	V INTERFACE SUBNET, 192.168.10.0/24
Destination Address:	DMZ_SUBNET	▼ INTERFACE SUBNET, 192.168.3.0/24
Schedule:	none	✓ N/A
Authentication:	required	<b>~</b>
🔽 Force User Authenticatio	on 🚺	
Endpoint Security (EPS)  Enable EPS Checking  Periodical checking time  Available EPS Object internet_check	1 (1-1440 min →	utes) Selected EPS Object DMZ_check ♥



General Settings					
🔽 Enable Policy					
Description:	internet_access		(Optio	nal)	
User Authentication Policy					
Source Address:	LAN1_SUBNET		~	INTERFACE SUBNET, 192.168.10.0/24	
Destination Address:	any		~	N/A	
Schedule:	none		~	N/A	
Authentication:	required		~		
V Force User Authenticatio	n i				
Endpoint Security (FPS)					
Enable EPS Checking	1 (1-1	440 minu	toc)		
Ausilable SPS Object	1 (1-1	110 111110	Colo	stad EBC Object	
DMZ_check			inter	net_check	
		_			_
		<b>→</b>			<u>↑</u>

Endpoint needs to match at least one EPS object.

Below is the Authentication Policy summary.

Authentie	hentication Policy Summary							
🕥 Add	<b>H 📝 E</b> a	lit 🍵 Remove 💡	Activate 🜚 Inactiv	ate 📣 Move				
Status	Priority	Source	Destination	Schedule	Authentication	EPS	Description	
0	1	LAN1_SUBNET	any	none	force	internet_check	internet_access	
0	2	LAN1_SUBNET	DMZ_SUBNET	none	force	DMZ_check	DMZ_access	
	Default	any	any	none	unnecessary	n/a	n/a	
14 4	Page	1 of 1   > >	Show 50 🗸 item	IS				Displaying 1 - 3 of 3

### 2.2.3. Scenario Verification

Before LAN clients pass authentication, they cannot access internet.

C:\Documen	ts and Setting	s Administrat	:or>pi	ng 8.8.8.8
Pinging 8.	8.8.8 with 32	bytes of data	.=	
Reply from	192.168.10.1:	Destination	host	unreachable.
Reply from	192.168.10.1:	Destination	host	unreachable.
Reply from	192.168.10.1:	Destination	host	unreachable.
Reply from	192.168.10.1:	Destination	host	unreachable.

Access the USG login page, and enter username and password to go through the USG checking.



User Name:	le l	test			
Password:		••••			
One-Time Password	d: [			(Optiona	l)
( max. 31 alphanum)	eric, printab	le character	s and no sp	oaces )	

USG will perform the EPS checking action.



If the client's environment doesn't comply with the EPS checking criterion, the USG will give out the message as below.

EPS Check I	Failure	
A Endp admi	ooint Security checking failed. Please contact inistrator for help.	
Close		

After the client pass the USG authentication and EPS checking, the USG will grant the client access to the internet.



# 2.3. Deploy EPS in SSL VPN

In SSL VPN application, some SSL VPN clients may not have anti-virus software installed. They may have some virus. If they access HQ network resources through SSL VPN, they may propagate virus to the HQ network. HQ network administrator can utilize EPS to restrict SSL VPN clients that only comply with certain security criterion can build SSL VPN with the HQ USG.

#### 2.3.1. Application Scenario

Internet clients can access HQ resources by building SSL VPN to HQ USG. To prevent any SSL VPN client from bringing virus to HQ network, administrator can enable EPS check in SSL VPN policy, to allow only clients that have anti-virus software installed to build SSL VPN tunnel to USG.



## 2.3.2.Configuration Steps

Step1. Go to Configuration>Object>Endpoint Security, add EPS object for SSL VPN check.



General Settings							
Object Name:	SSL_V	'PN_check					
Description:							
Passing Criterion			1				
Endpoint must comply with at least one checking ite	m						
Endpoint must comply with all checking items							
Checking Item - Operating System							
Endpoint Operating System:	Windo	)WS		•			
Window Version:	Windo	ows XP		v			
Endpoint must update to Windows Service Pack:			(ex				
Checking Item - Windows Update and Security Patch							
Windows Update Settings  Endpoint must enable Windows Auto Update							
Windows Security Patch that endpoint must have							
O Add TRemove							
# Windows Security Patch			_	Nie debe be dieselen.			
	ems			No data to display			
Example: "Windows Security Patch" : KB5682							
Checking Item - Personal Firewall							
Endpoint must have Personal Firewall installed							
Available		Allowed Person	al Fi	irewall List			
Kaspersky Internet Security v2009							
Microsoft_Security_Center							
TrendMicro_PC-cillin_Internet_Security_Pro_v2010	-						
TrendMicro_PC-cillin_Internet_Security_v2010							
		Endpoint need:	e to r	match any of the personal firewall			
		•	3 (0)				
Checking Item - Anti-Yirus Software		·	3.01				
Checking Item - Anti-Virus Software			3 (01				
Checking Item - Anti-Virus Software		Allowed Acti Vice	3 (01	Columna Liek			
Checking Item - Anti-Virus Software           Image: Checking Item - Anti-Virus Software Installed           Image: Checking Item - Anti-Virus Software Installed           Available		Allowed Anti-Vin Avira Antivir Pers	rus sonal	Software List			
Checking Item - Anti-Virus Software	5	Allowed Anti-Vir Avira_Antivir_Pers Kaspersky_Anti-Vi	rus sonal	Software List ■_v2009 _v2009			
Checking Item - Anti-Virus Software	+	Allowed Anti-Vir Avira_Antivir_Pers Kaspersky_Anti-Vi Kaspersky_Anti-Vi	rus sonal rus_rus_	Software List I_v2009 v2009 v2010			
Checking Item - Anti-Virus Software	+	Allowed Anti-Vir Avira_Antivir_Pers Kaspersky_Anti-Vi Kaspersky_Anti-Vi Kaspersky_Interne	rus sonal rus_ rus_ et_So	Software List i_v2009 v2009 v2010 iecurity_v2009			
Checking Item - Anti-Virus Software	÷	Allowed Anti-Vir Avira_Antivir_Pers Kaspersky_Anti-Vi Kaspersky_Anti-Vi Kaspersky_Interni Kaspersky_Interni	rus ! sonal rus_' rus_' et_Si et_Si	Software List           № 2009           v2009           v2010           iecurity_v2009           jecurity_v2009			

Step2. Go to Configuration > VPN > SSL VPN > Access Privilege, add SSL VPN policy.

Enable EPS checking, and select the EPS object for SSL VPN checking.



Name:	551			
	550			
Join SSL_VPN Zone				
Description:	New Create		(Optional)	
📄 Clean browser cache wh	en user logs out 🔋			
User/Group				
Selectable User/Group Ol	ojects		Selected User/Group Objects	
admin		_	test	
Idap-users		*		
radius-users				
ad-users				
Endpoint Security (EPS)				
🔽 Enable EPS Checking				
Periodical checking t	ime 1		(1-1440 minutes)	
Selectable EPS Objects —			Selected EPS Objects	
internet check		_L		1
		*		
			E	l
SSL Application List (Option	nal)			
Selectable Application Ub	jects		Selected Application Ubjects	
		*		
		F		
Network Extension (Option	al)			
Enable Network Extension	'n			
Assign IP Pool:	ssl_pool		✓ RANGE 10.0.0.1-10.0.0.10	
DNS Server 1:	none		~	
DNS Server 2:	none	-	×	
WINS Server 1:	none		•	
WINS Server 2:	none	-	~	
	L			
Network List				
Selectable Address Object	ts		Selected Address Objects	
EXT_WLAN_SUBNET			LAN1_SUBNET	
WLAN-1-1_SUBNET	6	•	LAN2_SUBNET	
subnet_HQ		F	DM2_SUBNET	

## 2.3.3. Scenario Verification

SSL VPN client tries to login to build SSL VPN tunnel to USG.



User Name:	test	
Password:	••••	
One-Time Password:		(Optional)
max. 31 alphanumeric,	printable characters	s and no spaces )

USG starts to perform EPS checking according to the EPS object selected in the SSL VPN policy.



If the SSL VPN client doesn't comply with the EPS criterion, the EPS check will fail, and SSL VPN tunnel will fail to establish.

	Application File Sharing	Welcome: test i <u>Loqout</u> (1
Application		
	EPS Check X	
	Enapoint Security checking railed. Please contact administrator for help.	
	<u>[OK]</u>	

If the SSL VPN client complies with the EPS criterion, it will pass the EPS check and SSL VPN tunnel will be established.





# 2.4. Deploy AAA and EPS in SSL VPN

#### 2.4.1. Application Scenario

In the scenario below, there're sales group users and CSO support group users in the AD server. Support users and sales users can access company resources by building SSL VPN to the company gateway USG.

The company requires that support users and sales users access different network resources. For example, the support can only access company support fileshares, and sales can only access company sales fileshares. So network administrator can configure different SSL VPN rules for different group users. Also network administrator can deploy different EPS checking policies for different SSL VPN rules. For example, he/she can deploy EPS check for sales, while not deploying EPS check for support.



#### 2.4.2.Configuration Steps

Step1. On AD server, add users/groups in AD server. Go to Start > Administrative Tools >Active Directory user and computer.


## **ZyWALL USG Support Notes**

🧊 📁 İ	### #5	1	Active Directory 用户和计算机	
我的申脑 BASPPPOR nutr	al txt	<u>گھ</u>	Active Directory 域和信任关系	
JUND CAR INDITION PPT		5	Active Directory 站点和服务	
		P	DHCP	
		4	DNS	
网上邻居 utorrent		6	Internet 信息服务(IIS)管理器	
and the second		<b>R</b>	Microsoft .NET Framework 1.1 配置	100
		- <b>R</b>	Microsoft .NET Framework 1.1 向导	
		Ŀ	分布式文件系统	
Administrator		ф,	服务	
	-		管理您的服务器	
🧊 管理您的服务器	🗾 我的电脑	9	计算机管理	
<u> </u>	🥠 控制面板 (r)	8	连接管理器管理工具包	
C// 命令提示符		Ì	路由和远程访问	
255 add - 167 000		4	配置您的服务器向导	
Indows 觉得官理番	😪 连接到 (I) 🔹 🕨	6	群集管理器	
W ==	🍓 打印机和传真	9	亊件查看器	
			授权	
111		7	数据源 (ODBC)	Mic
	//////////////////////////////////////	0	网络负载平衡管理器	~
👔 连接管理器管理工具包		6	性能	
		6	域安全策略	
所有程序 (ṟ)		6	域控制器安全策略	
		B	远程桌面	
		6	证书颁发机构	
🛃 开始 🚽 🖉 🖸 📶		₩.	终端服务管理器 ▼	

Go to Users > New > Users. Add user accounts.

In this example, we add new users "judy", "nancy", "chris" and "lucy". Please note your AD server's domain name. In this example the AD domain is cso.org.



### **ZyWALL USG Support Notes**

≪ Active Directory 用	户和讨	十算机		
🎻 文件 (P) 操作 (A) 查看 (	<u>v</u> ) 18	寄口(W) 帮助(H)		
	× 🖻	0 🖻 😫 🖬	🦹 🖉 👛 💎	🍕 🗇
ctive Directory 用户和计算机	[t953	Users 47 î	∽对象	
▋保存的查询		名称	类型 🗵	描述
Allan		🕵 Support	安全组 - 全局	
🖬 🧰 Builtin		🕵 Administr	用户	管理计算机(域)的内置
🛛 🧰 Computers		🙎 aduser	用户	
🛛 🧭 Domain Controllers	_	🕵 AllanG	用户	
ForeignSecurityFrincips	1s	🖸 chris	用户	
🔄 🌇 委派控制 (2)		Guest	电户	供来宾访问计算机成访
查找 (I)		6 ha	用户	
新建(11)	•	计算机	用户	匿名访问 Internet 信
所有任务(X)	•	联系人	用户	用于启动进程外应用程
	_	组	用户	
	•	InetOrgPerson	用户	
从这里创建窗口(图)	_	MSMQ 队列别名	用户	
刷新 (2)		打印机	用户	
导出列表 (L)		用户 📐	市广	
属性の)		共享文件夹	用户	
()第1日(四)	$-\Box$	👮 redol	用户	
帮助任		😰 rex	用户	
		🕵 sophie	用户	
		50 SUPPORT_3	用户	这是一个帮助和支持服
		🕵 test	用户	
		🜠 test1	用户	
	_	🔛 userl	用户	
<	>	N user10	шл	

Users 39 1	入对象	
名称	类型 💴	描述
🕵 Domain Gu	安全组 - 全局	域的所有来宾
🕵 Domain Users	安全组 - 全局	所有域用户
🕵 Enterpris	安全组 - 全局	企业的指定系统管理员
🕵 Group Pol	安全组 - 全局	这个组中的成员可以修
👧 RD	安全组 - 全局	
🥵 sales	安全组 - 全局	
🕵 Schema Ad	安全组 - 全局	架构的指定系统管理员
🕵 Support	安全组 - 全局	
🕵 Administr	用户	管理计算机(域)的内置
🕵 aduser	用户	
🕵 AllanG	用户	
🕵 chris	用户	
👧 Guest	用户	供来宾访问计算机或访
🕵 IVSR_T953	用户	匿名访问 Internet 信
🕵 IWAM_T953	用户	用于启动进程外应用程
🕵 judy	用户	
🕵 lucy	用户	
🥂 nancy	用户	
🕵 sophi e	用户	
<b>—</b>		

Switch to menu Users > New > Group. Add groups. In this example, we add two "cso"

and "sales".

≪ Active Directory 用户和;	十算机		
🎻 文件 (E) 操作 (A) 查看 (V) 🗃	野口(W) 帮助(H)		
←→ 🖻 🗷 🛍 🗙 😭	0 🖹 😫 🖬	🦉 🖉 는 💎	🤹 😨
ctive Directory 用户和计算机 [t95: ) 促左的本沟	Users 391	∼对象	
	名称	类型 🖉	描述
Allan	Bomain Gu	安全组 - 全局 安全组 - 全局	域的所有来宾 所有姆田户
Computers	Enterpris		2017年33(11) 企业的指定系统管理员 这个组中的成员可以修
Jomain Controllers	RU RD	安主組 - 主向 安全组 - 全局	这千组中的成员可以修
▲ ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ●	🕵 sales 🕵 Schema Ad 🕵 Support	安 <mark>全组 - 全局</mark> 安全组 - 全局 安 <mark>全</mark> 组 - 全局	架构的指定系统管理员
新建 (II) ▶ 所有任务 (IX) ▶	计 <b>算机</b> 联系人	用户 用户	管理计算机(域)的内置
查看 (2) → 从这里创建窗口 (11)	組 InetOrgPerson MSMO 队列别名	用户 用户 用户	供来宾访问计算机或访
刷新 (E) 导出列表 (L)	打印机用户	用户 用户 用户	匿名访问 Internet 信 用于启动进程外应用程
属性 (B)		用户	
帮助 (H)	🕵 nancy 🕼 sophie	用户	

Assign "judy" and "nancy" to the group "cso". And assign "chris" and "lucy" to the group "sales".

cso 属性		2 🔀
常规  成员	隶属于 管理者	
成员(图):		
名称	Active Directory 文件夹	
🙍 judy	cso.org/Users	
🕵 nancy	cso.org/Vsers	
2		2
	k-	
添加の)	冊降(3)	
14000H (27	2001/24 (25)	
	确定 取消	应用(4)



sales 属性		? 🔀
常规 成员	隶属于 管理者	
成员(M):		
名称	Active Directory 文件夹	
🕵 chris	cso.org/Vsers	
🙎 lucy	cso.org/Users	
9		
	R.	
添加 @)	册除(图)	
		应用(à)

Step2. On USG, configure AAA Server.

Go to Configuration > Object > AAA Server > Active Directory. Edit the profile "ad".



General Settings		
Name:	ad	
Description:		Optional
Server Settings		
Server Address:	172.25.27.110	(IP or FQDN)
Backup Server Address:		(IP or FQDN)Optional
Port:	389	(1-65535)
Base DN:	dc=cso,dc=org	]
Use SSL		
Search time limit:	5	(1-300 seconds)
Server Authentication		
Bind DN:	cn=administrator,cn=us	
Password:	•••••	]
User Login Settings		
Login Name Attribute:	sAMAccountName	
Alternative Login Name Attribute:	userPrincipalName	Optional
Group Membership Attribute:	memberOf	]
Configuration Validation		
Please enter a user account existed in t	he configured server to valida	ate above settings.
Username:		Test

Put in the company AD server's address in Server Address field.

The default port of AD server is UDP 389. If your AD server is configured as a different port, please input the corresponding port number here.

For the Base DN field, if your AD server's domain is cso.org, please input like below: dc=cso, dc=org

The Server Authentication part is for the USG get authenticated by the AD server before it can use AD server's active directory database.

Bind DN: Please fill in the field like: cn=<administrator>,cn=users,dc=cso,dc=org You can replay <administrator> with any user configured in the AD.

"dc=cso,dc=org" is the AD server's domain. In this example is cso.org.

Password is the corresponding password of <administrator>.

When a Bind DN is not specified, the ZyWALL will try to log in as an anonymous user.



Please leave the "Login Name Attribute" and "Group Membership Attribute" as system default.

Alternative Login Name Attribute is optional. You can fill in "userPrincipalName" here. Then users can login the USG by email address as well as by user name.

After the configuration of AD is done, you can verify whether the configuration is ok, and the communication between AD and USG is ok.

Name:	ad	
Description:		Optional
Server Settings		
Server Address:	172.25.27.110	(IP or FQDN)
Backup Server Address:		(IP or FQDN)Optional
Port:	389	(1-65535)
Base DN:	dc=cso,dc=org	
Use SSL		
Search time limit:	5	(1-300 seconds)
Server Authentication		
Bind DN:	cn=administrator,cn=us	
Password:	•••••	]
User Login Settings		
Login Name Attribute:	sAMAccountName	
Alternative Login Name Attribute:	userPrincipalName	Optional
Group Membership Attribute:	memberOf	
Configuration Validation		
Please enter a user account existed in	the configured server to valida	ate above settings.
Username:	judy	Test

### ZyWALL USG Support Notes

Name:		ad		
Description	n:		Optional	
Server Se	🔾 Test Result			? ×
Server Ac	Test Status:			
Backup Se	ок			
Port:				
Base DN				
🔳 Use 5	dn: CN=judy,CN=Users,DC=	cso,DC=org		
Search tin	objectClass: top objectClass: person			
	objectClass: organizationalPer	rson		
Server Au	cn: judy			
Bind DN:	sn: judy distinguishedName: CN=judy,	CN=Users,DC=cso,DC=or	g	
Password	instanceType: 4 whenCreated: 200804080841	16.0Z		
liser Logio	whenChanged: 20100308204 displayName: judy	^{906.0Z} I		
oser Logi	USNCreated: 258004			
Login Na				
Alternativ				ОК
Group M	mbership Attribute:	memberOf		
Configurati	ion ¥alidation			
Please ent	er a user account existed in the	configured server to valida	te above settings.	
Username	:	judy	Test	

If you have entered the attribute "Alternative Login Name Attribute" as shown in the picture below, you can also verify by user mail address.



Name:	ad	
Description:		Optional
Server Settings		
Server Address:	172.25.27.110	(IP or FQDN)
Backup Server Address:		(IP or FQDN)Optional
Port:	389	(1-65535)
Base DN:	dc=cso,dc=org	
Use SSL		
Search time limit:	5	(1-300 seconds)
Server Authentication		
Bind DN:	cn=administrator,cn=us	
Password:	•••••	
User Login Settings		
Login Name Attribute:	sAMAccountName	
Alternative Login Name Attribute:	userPrincipalName	Optional
Group Membership Attribute:	memberOf	
Configuration Validation		
Please enter a user account existed in the o	configured server to valida	te above settings.
Username:	judy@cso.org	Test (Im)
L		U

#### **ZyWALL USG Support Notes**

Name:	ad		
Description:		Optional	
Server Se 📀 Test Result			? ×
Server A:			
Backup S OK			
Port:			
Base DN			
Returned User Attributes:	cso,DC=org		
Search t objectClass: top	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,		_
objectClass: organizationalPer	rson		
Server At objectClass: user cn: judy			
Bind DN: sn: judy distinguishedName: CN-judy	CN-Users DC-sso DC-or		
Passwor i instanceType: 4 wbcpCreated: 200804090941	14 07	y	
whenChanged: 20100308204	906.0Z		
User Logi displayName: judy USNCreated: 258094	]		~
Login Na 🕆		-	
Alternative Login Name Attribute:			ОК
Group Mambership Attribute:	memberOf		
Configuration Validation			
Please enter a user account existed in the	configured server to valida	ate above settings.	
Username:	judy@cso.org	Test	

Step3. Go to Configuration > Object > User/Group > User, add user groups corresponding to the groups in the AD server.

In this example, we add two groups that correspond to the ones on the AD server: "cso" and "sales".

The User Name can be different from the group identifier. E.g. the group identifier of "cso" group is "cso", but we can specify a different name such as "cso_support".

The Group Identifier must follow the format as below:

CN=<cso>,CN=Users,DC=<cso>,DC=<org>

<cso> is the group name on the AD server.

Add group "cso":



er Configuration	
User Name:	cso_support
User Type:	ext-group-user 💌
Group Identifier:	CN=cso,CN=Users,DC=cso,DC=org
Associated AAA Server Object:	ad 👻
Description	Local Liser
Description.	
nfiguration Validation	
nfiguration Validation Please enter a user account existed i	n the configured group to validate above settings.

You can verify whether a user is in this group.

O Edit User cso_support	External AD Lisars	? X
User Configuration		
User Name:	cso_support	
User Type:	ext-group-user 🗸	
Group Identifier:	CN=cso,CN=Users,DC=cso,DC=org	
Associated AAA Server Object:	ad 🗸	
Description:	Local User	
Configuration Validation		
Please enter a user account existed in the	configured group to validate above settings.	
User Name:	judy Test	
	$\Box$	

### ZyWALL USG Support Notes

📀 Edit Us	📀 Test Result		? ×	<b>?</b> >
User C	Test Status:			
User	v			
User				
Group	Returned User Attributes:			
Assoc	dn: CN=judy,CN=Users,DC=cso,DC=org objectClass: top		^	
Descr	objectClass: person objectClass: organizationalPerson objectClass: user			
Configu	cn: judy			
Pleas	distinguishedName: CN=judy,CN=Users,DC=cso,DC=org instanceType: 4			
User	whenCreated: 20080408084116.0Z whenChanged: 20100308204906.0Z	I		
	displayName: judy USNCreated: 258094		~	
			ОК	ancel

#### Add group "sales":

📀 Edit User sales		? ×
User Configuration		
User Name:	sales	
User Type:	ext-group-user 🗸	
Group Identifier:	CN=sales,CN=Users,DC=cso,DC=org	
Associated AAA Server Object:	ad 🗸	
Description:	Local User	
Configuration Validation Please enter a user account existed in th	e configured group to validate above settings.	
User Name:		

You can verify whether a user is in the group "sales".



🕑 Edit Us	😳 Test Result		? ×	? X
User Co User	Test Status: OK			
User				
Group	Returned User Attributes:   dn: CN=lucy.CN=Users.DC=cso.DC=org			
Assoc	objectClass: top objectClass: person			
Descr	objectClass: organizationalPerson objectClass: user cn: lucy			
Configu	<pre>distinguishedName: CN=lucy,CN=Users,DC=cso,DC=org instanceType: 4</pre>	т		
Pleas	whenCreated: 20100127031926.0Z	Т		
User	whenChanged: 20100308204943.0Z displayName: lucy			
	uSNCreated: 307212 memberOf: CN=sales,CN=Users,DC=cso,DC=org		~	
			ок	ancel

Step4. Go to Configuration > Object >Auth. Method, modify the authentication method of "default". Add "group ad".

O Add Auth	entication Method	? ×
General S	default	
O Add	Zerian Remove M Move	1
# N	ethod List	
1 <u>c</u>	roup ad	
2 10	ical	
	N	
	<i>К</i>	

Step5. Go to Configuration > System > WWW > Service Control. In the "Authentication" part, make sure the "Client Authentication Method" is chosen as "default".



Service Control Login Page		
Redirect HTTP to HTTP5		
Admin Service Control		
📀 Add 📝 Edit 🍵 Remove 📣 Move		
# 🔺 Zone	Address	Action
- ALL	ALL	accept
I 4 Page 1 of 1 ▶ ▶ Show 50 ▼ items		Displaying 1 - 1 of 1
User Service Control		
📀 Add 📝 Edit 🍵 Remove 🔊 Move		
# 🔺 Zone	Address	Action
- ALL	ALL	accept
I 4 Page 1 of 1 ▶ ▶ Show 50 ✓ items		Displaying 1 - 1 of 1
HTTP		
💟 Enable		
Server Port: 80		
Server Port: 80 Admin Service Control		
Server Port:         80           Admin Service Control         40           ③ Add ② Edit 1 aremove 3 Move         1 aremove 3 Move		
Server Port:         80           Admin Service Control	Address	Action
Server Port:         80           Admin Service Control         Image: Control of the service of the ser	Address	Action accept
Server Port: 80  Admin Service Control  Add 2 Edit 1 Remove M Move  #  Zone  ALL  4 Page 1 of 1 > > Show 50 v Items	Address ALL	Action accept Displaying 1 - 1 of 1
Server Port: 80 Admin Service Control Add 2 Edit 1 Remove Move # 2 Zone - ALL 4 Page 1 of 1 P Show 50 vitems User Service Control	Address ALL	Action accept Displaying 1 - 1 of 1
Server Port: 80 Admin Service Control Add 2 Edit 2 Remove Move # 2 Zone - ALL 4 Page 1 of 1 P Show 50 vitems User Service Control Show 2 Move	Address ALL	Action accept Displaying 1 - 1 of 1
Server Port: 80 Admin Service Control Add 2 Edit 1 Remove Move # A Zone - ALL 4 Page 1 of 1 P Show 50 vitems User Service Control 3 Add 2 Edit 1 Remove Move # A Zone	Address ALL Address	Action accept Displaying 1 - 1 of 1
Server Port: 80 Admin Service Control Add 2 Edit 7 Remove M Move # 2 Zone - ALL Ver Service Control Show 50 vitems User Service Control Add 2 Edit 7 Remove M Move # 2 Zone - ALL	Address ALL Address ALL	Action I accept I of a Companying 1 - 1 of 1
Server Port: 80 Admin Service Control Add 2 Edit 7 Remove M Move # 2 Cone - ALL 4 Page 1 of 1 b b Show 50 v Items User Service Control Sector 2 Control Add 2 Edit 7 Remove M Move # 2 Cone - ALL 4 Page 1 of 1 b b Show 50 v Items	Address ALL Address ALL	Action I accept I of a Company I of
Server Port: 80 Admin Service Control Add Cone ALL ALL Show 50 vitems User Service Control Add Cone ALL Add Cone ALL Add Cone Add Cone ALL Show 50 vitems Cone Add Cone Add Cone Add Cone	Address ALL Address ALL	Action I accept I of accept I
Server Port: 80 Admin Service Control Add Carl Add Carl	Address ALL Address ALL	Action I accept I of 1 Action I of 1 Displaying 1 - 1 of 1 Action I of 1 Action I of 1 Displaying 1 - 1 of 1

Step6. Go to Configuration > Object > SSL Application, add applications for the support and sales group.

0	Add 📝 Edit 🍵 Remove 📴 Ob	nject Reference		
#	Name 🔺	Address	Туре	
1	sales_file	\\192.168.1.6\sales	file-sharing	
2	support_file	\\192.168.1.6\cso	file-sharing	
14	🖣   Page 1 of 1   🕨 🕅   S	how 50 🗸 items		Displaying 1 - 2 of 2

Step7. Go to Configuration > Object > Endpoint Security, add EPS policy for checking the sales group.



priow Auvanced pettings				
Endpoint must comply with at least one checking	ng item			
Endpoint must comply with all checking items				
hecking Item - Operating System				
Endpoint Operating System:	Wind	tows	×	
Window Version	Wie	Hours YD		
Window Version:	998 R	JOWS AP	(and a few at least CDD and at a	
Enopoint must update to windows bervice Pack:	2		(ex: 2 for at least 5P2 update,	Diank for don't care)
hecking Item - Windows Update and Security P	atch			
Vindows Update Settings				
📝 Endpoint must enable Windows Auto Update				
indows Security Patch that endpoint must hav	e			
O Add 📋 Remove				
# Windows Security Patch 🔺				
◀ ◀   Page 1 of 1   ▶ ▶     Show 50	🗸 items			No data to display
xample: "Windows Security Patch" : KB5682 hecking Item - Personal Firewall				
************************************	< + +	Allowed Persona Microsoft_Security	al Firewall List _Center	•
************************************	< + +	Allowed Persona Microsoft_Security Endpoint needs	a <b>l Firewall List</b> _Center : to match any of the personal fi	rewall
************************************	•	Allowed Persona Microsoft_Security Endpoint needs	a <b>l Firewall List</b> _Center : to match any of the personal fi	irewall
************************************	< + +	Allowed Persona Microsoft_Security Endpoint needs	al Firewall List _Center	irewall
************************************		Allowed Persona Microsoft_Security Endpoint needs	I Firewall List _Center to match any of the personal fi	irewall
**mpre: "Windows Security Patch" : KB5682  hecking Item - Personal Firewall  Indpoint must have Personal Firewall installed  Available  Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2009  Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2010  TrendMicro_PC-cillin_Internet_Security_Pro_v2010  TrendMicro_PC-cillin_Internet_Security_v2010  Windows_Firewall  hecking Item - Anti-Virus Software  Indpoint must have Anti-Virus software installed  Available  Avira_Antivir_Personal_v2009  Kaspersky_Antivirus_v2009		Allowed Persona Microsoft_Security Endpoint needs Allowed Anti-Vir Microsoft_Security	I Firewall List _Center : to match any of the personal fi us Software List _Center	irewall
************************************		Allowed Persona Microsoft_Security Endpoint needs Allowed Anti-Vir Microsoft_Security	I Firewall List _Center to match any of the personal fi us Software List _Center	irewall
************************************		Allowed Persona Microsoft_Security Endpoint needs Allowed Anti-Vir Microsoft_Security	I Firewall List _Center : to match any of the personal fi us Software List _Center	irewall
<b>xample:</b> "Windows Security Patch" : KB5682 <b>hecking Item - Personal Firewall</b> Image: Endpoint must have Personal Firewall installed         Available         Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2009         Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2010         TrendMicro_PC-cillin_Internet_Security_v2010         Windows_Firewall <b>hecking Item - Anti-Virus Software</b> Image: Endpoint must have Anti-Virus software installed         Available         Available         Avira_Antivir_Personal_v2009         Kaspersky_Anti-Virus_v2010         Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2009         Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2009         Kaspersky_Internet_Security_v2010		Allowed Persona Microsoft_Security Endpoint needs Allowed Anti-Vir Microsoft_Security	I Firewall List _Center to match any of the personal fi us Software List _Center	irewall

Step8. Go to Configuration > VPN >SSL VPN > Access Privilege, add two SSL VPN rules for cso_support and sales.



WLAN-1-1_SUBNET

Create new Object 🔻			
Enable Policy			
Name:	for_cso		
Join SSL_VPN Zone			
Description:	New Create	(Optional)	
🔲 Clean browser cache	when user logs out 🛐	]	
User/Group			
Selectable User/Group	Objects	Selected User/Group Objects	
=== Object :		=== Object ===	
Idan-users			
radius-users			
ad-users			
color	~		
Endpoint Security (EPS)			
🔲 Enable EPS Checking			
📄 Periodical checkir	ng time 1	(1-1440 minutes)	
Selectable EPS Objects		Selected EPS Objects	
ssl_check			
			<b>+</b>
			•
		Federalet erade to match at least one FD(	
		Enupoint needs to match at least one EP:	o object.
SSL Application List (Op	tional)		
Selectable Application	Objects	Selected Application Objects	
sales_file		support_file	
Network Extension (Opt	ional)		
📄 Enable Network Exter	nsion		
Assign IP Pool:	Please select one .	~	
DNS Server 1:	none	~	
DNS Server 2:	none	~	
WINS Server 1:	none	▼	
WINS Server 2:	none	*	
Network List			
Selectable Address Ob	jects	Selected Address Objects	
LAN1_SUBNET			
LAN2_SUBNET			
EXT_WLAN_SUBNET			
DMZ_SUBNET			



🗉 Create new Object 🔻				
Configuration				
🔽 Enable Policy				
Name:	for_sales			
Join SSL VPN Zone				
Description:	New Create		(Ontional)	
Clean browser cache w	hen user logs out	]	(optional)	
User/Group				
Selectable User/Group 0	bjects	2	Selected User/Group Objects	
=== Object =:	^		=== Object ===	
admin		ъĻ	sales	
idap-users		<b>←</b>		
raulus-users				
	~			
Endpoint Security (EPS)				
📝 Enable EPS Checking				
Periodical checking	time 1		(1-1440 minutes)	
Selectable EPS Objects -			Selected EPS Objects	
			ssl_check	
		→	+	
		+	*	
			Endpoint needs to match at least one EPS object.	
SSL Application List (Optio	onal)			
Selectable Application 0	bjects	ŕ	Selected Application Objects	
support_tile		Ľ	sales_file	
		→		
		+		
Network Extension (Optio	nal)			
Enable Network Extensi	ion			
Assign IP Pool:	Please select on	e	*	
DNS Server 1:	none		×	
DNS Server 2:	none		~	
WINS Server 1:	none		<b>v</b>	
WINS Server 2:	none		~	
Network List				
Selectable Address Obje	cts		Selected Address Ubjects	
LAN2 SUBNET				
FXT WIAN SUBNET		→		
DMZ_SUBNET		+		
WLAN-1-1 SLIBNET				
Line a strander of				

## 2.4.3. Scenario Verification

Open the USG login page. Make sure Java is installed and enabled on your browser. Use a user "judy" in the group "cso" to login SSL VPN.

ZyWALL USG 200	Enter User Name/Pass	sword and click to lo	gin.	
	User Name:	judy		
	Password:	•••••		
-	One-Time Password:		(Optional)	
			Login SSL VRN	
			Login SS	6L VPN portal
	<b>() Note:</b> 1. Turn on Javascript and 2. Turn off Popup Window 3. Turn on Java Runtime E	Cookie setting in your w v Blocking in your web b invironment (JRE) in you	veb browser. rrowser. .r web browser.	

SSL VPN is established, and you can see the fileshare on the portal is for the group AD user "cso".

ZyXEL	Application File Sharing
	Application  # Type Name  Very Page 1 of 1  Show 50  items
	Welcome to SSL VPN

# ZyWALL USG Support Notes

ZyXEL		Application	<b>File Sharing</b>	
	File Sharing			
	support_file			

Use a user "lucy" in the group "sales" to login SSL VPN.

ZyWALL USG 200	Enter User Name/Pas	sword and click to lo	gin.
	User Name:	lucy	
	Password:	•••••	
-	One-Time Password:		(Optional)
		(	
	<b>Note:</b> 1. Turn on Javascript and 2. Turn on Java Bundine F	Cookie setting in your w v Blocking in your web b avironment (185) in you	reb browser. rowser. rowser.

## ZyWALL USG Support Notes

ZyXEL	-	Application	File Sharing		Welcome: lucy i <u>Loqout</u>	(* <u>Add to Fav</u>
<i>i</i>	Application					
			Check Endpoint Security	1		
			₽			

SSL VPN is established, and you can see the fileshare on the portal is for the group AD user "sales".

XEL	Application	File Sharing	weicome
	Application		
T.	# Type	Name	
2	4 4   Page 1 of 1   ▶ ▶     Sho	w 50 v items	
		Welcome	
		Welcome to SSL VPN	

# ZyWALL USG Support Notes

ZyXEL		Application	File Sharing		Welcome: lucy I <u>Loqout</u>
	File Sharing				
	sales_file				

# **3. VoIP Application with USG**

VoIP (Voice over Internet Protocol) is transportation of voice traffic using the Internet Protocol (IP). It's a cost-effective substitute of PSTN, and nowadays is more and more popular used in Enterprises. However, SIP VoIP is an NAT unfriendly application. USG with its ALG function is compatible with most popular VoIP devices in varies scenarios.

# 3.1. VoIP Support Device List

The table below lists the USG supported VoIP devices. The devices in the list are compatible with USG SIP ALG when used in NAT scenario, and they are also compatible with USG SIP when they are use in Bandwidth Management applications.

SIP Phone	Version	SIP	AppPatrol SIP
		ALG(PASS/FAIL)	BWM(PASS/FAIL)
Windows Messenger	5.1(5.1.0715)	Pass	Pass
Softphone V100	1.1.89.69.01	Pass	Pass
Softphone V120	1.1.96.69.00	Pass	Pass
V300-T1	1.10(AOW.0)	Pass	Pass
V500-T1	1.10(AOX.0)	Pass	Pass
Click-To-Talk	v1.0.101.69.01	Pass	Pass
Snom820-SIP		Pass	Pass
Linksys SPA-3000		Pass	Pass
Cisco IP Phone 7940	POS3-04-4-00	Pass	Pass
GogoTalk	1.54	Pass	Pass
3CXPhone	1.17	Pass	Pass
X-Lite	3.0 build	Pass	Pass
	29712		
SJphone	1.65	Pass	Pass
Aastra 6731i	2.5.1.2000	Pass	Pass
Aastra 57i	2.1.0.2145	Pass	Pass
ZyXEL X2002 / X6004	1.11(AVA.0)b2	Pass	Pass

# 3.2. VoIP in NAT Scenario

SIP VoIP in nature is an NAT unfriendly application, since it uses a different port for the RTP traffic (voice stream) other than the session initiation port which is by default uses UDP 5060.

There're currently the following solutions to solve the SIP and NAT incompatibility issue.

- SIP ALG on the NAT gateway
- STUN
- Outbound Proxy
- Solutions in SIP client devices (such as Use NAT in ZyXEL VoIP clients)

USG ZyWALL supports SIP ALG. Network administrator just needs to enable SIP ALG on the ZyWALL. Then he can deploy VoIP solutions in various NAT scenarios, no matter the SIP server is in the internet, or in the local network.

## 3.2.1.SIP Server on the Internet

#### 3.2.1.1. Application Scenario

In the scenario below, the SIP server is on the Internet. There're SIP clients both in the USG local network, and on the internet side. All the clients are registered to the SIP server. We want all the clients can call each other:

The local clients can call out to the clients on the Internet.

The Internet clients can call in the local clients.

The local clients also can call each other.



#### 3.2.1.2. Configuration Steps

You just need to enable SIP ALG on the USG ZyWALL to make this scenario work. Go to Configuration > Network > ALG, enable SIP ALG, and also please make sure to enable SIP Transformations.

SIP Settings				
🔽 Enable SIP ALG				
Enable SIP Transformations				
👿 Enable Configure SIP Inactivity Timeo	ıt			
SIP Media Inactivity Timeout :		120	(seconds)	
SIP Signaling Inactivity Timeout :		1800	(seconds)	
SIP Signaling Port :		🗿 Add	🛃 Edit 🍵 Remove	
		# Po	ort 🔺	
		1 50	060	

After this setting is done, register all the clients to the Internet SIP server, then all the clients can call each other, no matter they're in the local network, or in the Internet.

### **3.2.2.SIP Server on the Local Network**

#### 3.2.2.1. Application Scenario

In the scenario below, the SIP server is on the local network. There're SIP clients both in the USG local network, and on the internet side. All the clients are registered to the SIP server. We want all the clients can call each other: The local clients can call out to the clients on the Internet. The Internet clients can call in the local clients. The Internet clients can call each other. The local clients can call each other.





#### 3.2.2.2. Configuration Steps

Step1. Go to Configuration > Network > NAT, add one NAT rule to map the SIP traffic to the local SIP server.

📝 Enable Rule		
Rule Name:	SIP	
Port Mapping Type		
Classification:	Virtual Server	🔘 1:1 NAT 💮 Many 1:1 NAT
Mapping Rule		
Incoming Interface:	wan1	~
Original IP:	User Defined	~
User-Defined Original IP:	172.25.27.100	(IP Address)
Mapped IP:	User Defined	~
User-Defined Mapped IP:	192.168.1.34	(IP Address)
Port Mapping Type:	Service	~
Original Service:	SIP	✓ UDP, 5060
Mapped Service:	SIP	✓ UDP, 5060
Related Settings		

Step2. Go to Configuration>Firewall, add one firewall rule to allow the SIP traffic from WAN to the local SIP server.

🔘 Add	📝 Edit 🍵 Re	move 🥝 Activate	e 😨 Inactivate 🗗	Move Nove						
Status	Priority 🔺	From	То	Schedule	User	Source	Destination	Service	Access	Log
0	1	■WAN	■LAN1	none	any	any	■SIP_SVR	■ SIP	allow	no
<b>@</b>	2	<th>ZyWALL</th> <th>none</th> <th>any</th> <th>any</th> <th>any</th> <th><pre>■Default_Allow_V</pre></th> <th>allow</th> <th>no</th>	ZyWALL	none	any	any	any	<pre>■Default_Allow_V</pre>	allow	no
0	3	<th>ZyWALL</th> <th>none</th> <th>any</th> <th>any</th> <th>any</th> <th>any</th> <th>deny</th> <th>log</th>	ZyWALL	none	any	any	any	any	deny	log
<b>@</b>	4	<th>any (Excluding Zy</th> <th>none</th> <th>any</th> <th>any</th> <th>any</th> <th>any</th> <th>deny</th> <th>log</th>	any (Excluding Zy	none	any	any	any	any	deny	log
<b>@</b>	5	■DMZ	ZyWALL	none	any	any	any	<pre>■Default_Allow_E</pre>	allow	no
<b>@</b>	6	■DMZ	ZyWALL	none	any	any	any	any	deny	log
0	7	■DMZ	<b>¤</b> ₩AN	none	any	any	any	any	allow	no
<b>@</b>	8	■DMZ	any (Excluding Zy	none	any	any	any	any	deny	log
0	9	<pre>NLAN</pre>	<b>¤</b> ₩AN	none	any	any	any	any	allow	no
<b>@</b>	10	<pre>NLAN</pre>	ZyWALL	none	any	any	any	Default_Allow_V	allow	no
<b>@</b>	11	<pre>NLAN</pre>	ZyWALL	none	any	any	any	any	deny	log
<b>@</b>	12	<th>any (Excluding Zy</th> <th>none</th> <th>any</th> <th>any</th> <th>any</th> <th>any</th> <th>deny</th> <th>log</th>	any (Excluding Zy	none	any	any	any	any	deny	log
	Default	any	any	none	any	any	any	any	allow	no
14 4	Page 1 of 1	▶ ▶ Show	50 🔻 items							Displaying 1 -

Step3. Go to Configuration > Network > ALG, enable SIP ALG, and also please make sure to enable SIP Transformations.

SIP Settings			
📝 Enable SIP ALG			
👿 Enable SIP Transformations			
📝 Enable Configure SIP Inactivit	y Timeout		
SIP Media Inactivity Timeout :		120	(seconds)
SIP Signaling Inactivity Timeou	::	1800	(seconds)
SIP Signaling Port :		📀 Ado	🛃 Edit 🍵 Remove
		# P	Port 🔺
		1 5	5060

After all these settings are done, all the clients can register to the local SIP server, and all the clients can call each other, no matter they're in the local network, or in the Internet.

# 3.3. VoIP in VPN Scenario

### 3.3.1. Application Scenario

In the scenario below, X6004 is placed in the local network of HQ. There're SIP clients in HQ local network, as well as in the branch offices' local networks. SIP clients want to register to the SIP server (X6004) securely through IPSec VPN tunnels. They also want to make calls to each other securely through VPN tunnels. No matter

they're in the HQ local network, or in the branch office networks. To meet the requirements, all the branch offices should build IPSec VPN tunnels to the HQ USG. Also to enable branch offices' SIP clients can call each other via VPN tunnels, the network administrator should also create IPSec VPN concentrator to include all the VPN tunnels built with branch offices.



## 3.3.2. Configuration Steps

IP address information on the HQ USG and branch USG:

HQ USG: WAN IP: 172.25.27.140 LAN1 subnet: 192.168.1.0/24 X6004 IP: 192.168.1.33

Branch office 1(Br1) USG: WAN IP: 172.25.27.90 LAN1 subnet: 192.168.4.0/24

Branch office 2 (Br2) USG: WAN IP: 172.25.27.39 LAN1 subnet: 192.168.5.0/24

On HQ USG:

Step1. Go to Monitor > System Status > Interface Status, check interface IP information.

Name	Port	Status	HA Status	Zone	IP Addr/Netmask	IP Assignment	Services	Action
	P1	100M/Full	n/a	WAN	172.25.27.140 / 255.255.255.0	DHCP client	n/a	Renew
wan1_ppp	P1	Inactive	n/a	WAN	0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0	Dynamic	n/a	n/a
i⊒i <u>wan2</u>	P2	Down	n/a	WAN	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	DHCP client	n/a	Renew
wan2_ppp	P2	Inactive	n/a	WAN	0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0	Dynamic	n/a	n/a
😑 <u>opt</u>	P3	Down	n/a	OPT	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	Static	n/a	n/a
opt_ppp	P3	Inactive	n/a	OPT	0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0	Dynamic	n/a	n/a
lan1	P4, P5, P6	Up	n/a	LAN1	192.168.1.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
lan2	n/a	Down	n/a	LAN2	192.168.2.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
ext-wian	n/a	Down	n/a	WLAN	10.59.0.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
dmz	P7	Down	n/a	DMZ	192.168.3.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
aux	aux	Inactive	n/a	WAN	0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0	Dynamic	n/a	n/a
⊡ <u>wlan-1</u>	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a / n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a
wlan-1-1	n/a	Down	n/a	WLAN	10.59.1.1 / 255.255.255.0	static	n/a	n/a

Step2. Go to Configuration > Object > Address, add address objects for Br1 local subnet and Br2 local subnet for later use in IPSec VPN configuration.

0	🔇 Add 📝 Edit 🃋 Remove 🔚 Object Reference							
#	Name 🔺	Туре	Address					
1	DMZ_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	dmz-192.168.3.0/24					
2	EXT_WLAN_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	ext-wlan-10.59.0.0/24					
3	LAN1_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	lan1-192.168.1.0/24					
4	LAN2_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	lan2-192.168.2.0/24					
5	WLAN-1-1_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	wlan-1-1-10.59.1.0/24					
6	subnet_br1	SUBNET	192.168.4.0/24					
7	subnet_br2	SUBNET	192.168.5.0/24					
14	Page 1 of 1 > > > Show 50 v items		Displaying 1 - 7 of 7					

Step3. Go to Configuration > VPN > IPSec VPN > VPN Gateway, add VPN phase1 rules for tunnels to Br1 and Br2.

To Br1:

My Address: WAN1 IP (172.25.27.140) Peer Gateway Address: Br1 WAN IP (172.25.27.90)



### ZyWALL USG Support Notes

📝 Enable		
VPN Gateway Name:	to_br1	
ateway Settings		
ly Address		
Interface	wan1	<ul> <li>DHCP client 172.25.27.140/255.255.255.</li> </ul>
🔘 Domain Name / IP		
eer Gateway Address		
Static Address	Primary	172.25.27.90
	Secondary	0.0.0.0
📄 Fall back to Primary Peer Gal	eway when possible	e
Fall Back Check Interval:	300	(60-86400 seconds)
Dynamic Address		
0		
-		
thentication		
Pre-Shared Key	12345678	
Ore-Shared Key     Certificate	12345678 default	✓ (See My Certificates)
<ul> <li>Pre-Shared Key</li> <li>Certificate</li> </ul>	12345678 default	(See <u>My Certificates</u> )
<ul> <li>thentication</li> <li>Pre-Shared Key</li> <li>Certificate</li> <li>ase 1 Settings</li> </ul>	12345678 default	(See <u>My Certificates</u> )

#### To Br2:

## My Address: WAN1 IP (172.25.27.140) Peer Gateway Address: Br2 WAN IP (172.25.27.37)

Show Advanced Settings	
General Settings	
📝 Enable	
VPN Gateway Name:	to_br2
Gateway Settings	
My Address	
Interface	wan1  v DHCP client 172.25.27.140/255.255.255.0
🔘 Domain Name / IP	
Peer Gateway Address	
Static Address	Primary 172.25.27.37
	Secondary 0.0.0.0
🔲 Fall back to Primary Peer Gate	away when possible
Fall Back Check Interval:	300 (60-86400 seconds)
Dynamic Address	
Authentication	
Pre-Shared Key	12345678
Certificate	default 🗸 (See <u>My Certificates</u> )
Phase 1 Settings	
SA Life Time:	86400 (180 - 3000000 Seconds)

Step4. Go to Configuration > VPN > IPSec VPN > VPN Connection, add VPN phase2 rules to Br1 and Br2.

To Br1:

Local policy: local LAN1 subnet (192.168.1.0/24) Remote policy: Br1 local subnet (192.168.4.0/24)

General Settings				
🔽 Enable				
Connection Name:	to_br1			
VPN Gateway				
Application Scenario				
Site-to-site				
Site-to-site with Dynamic Peer				
Remote Access (Server Role)				
Remote Access (Client Role)				
VPN Gateway:	to_br1	~	wan1 172.25.27.90 0.0.0.0	
Policy				
Local policy:	LAN1_SUBNET	~	INTERFACE SUBNET, 192.16	3.1.0/24
Remote policy:	subnet_br1	~	SUBNET, 192.168.4.0/24	
Phase 2 Settings				
SA Life Time:	86400 (:	180 -	3000000 Seconds)	
Related Settings				
Add this VPN connection to IPSec_VPN	zone.			
Connectivity Check				

To Br2:

Local policy: local LAN1 subnet (192.168.1.0/24) Remote policy: Br2 local subnet (192.168.5.0/24)



/ Enable				
onnection Name:	to_br2			
Gateway				
pplication Scenario				
Site-to-site				
Site-to-site with Dynamic Peer				
Remote Access (Server Role)				
Remote Access (Client Role)				
FN Gateway:	to_br2	*	wan1 172.25.27.37 0.0.0.0	
icy				
ocal policy:	LAN1_SUBNET	~	INTERFACE SUBNET, 192.168	3.1.0/24
emote policy:	subnet_br2	~	SUBNET, 192.168.5.0/24	
<b>ise 2 Settings</b> A Life Time:	86400	(180 -	3000000 Seconds)	
- to d C - Walter				

Step5. Go to Configuration > VPN > IPSec VPN > Concentrator, create on VPN concentrator. This concentrator should include all the IPSec VPN tunnels to branch offices.

Edit VPN Concentrator	r HQ_inter_routing				? ×
Name: HQ_ Available Default_L2TP_VPN_Con	inter_routing	+	Member to_br1 to_br2		<b>€</b>
				ОК	Cancel

Step6. Go to Configuration > Network > Zone. By default, Block Intra-zone is enabled for IPSec VPN zone. We should disable it.



Name: IPSec_VPN Block Intra-zone Traffic mober List		
Available === VPN Tunnel === Default_L2TP_VPN_Connection	•	Member           === VPN Tunnel ===           to_br1           to_br2

In ZLD v2.20, routing for VPN traffic is automatically created according the VPN phase2 local and remote policy. So we don't need to add any policy routes for the traffic from HQ local subnet to the branch office subnets.

On Br1

Step1. Go to Monitor > System Status > Interface Status, check the interface IP information for later use in IPSec VPN configuration.

Name	Port	Status	HA Status	Zone	IP Addr/Netmask	IP Assignment	Services	Action
🗎 <u>wan1</u>	P1	100M/Full	n/a	WAN	172.25.27.90 / 255.255.255.0	DHCP client	n/a	Renew
wan1_ppp	P1	Inactive	n/a	WAN	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	Dynamic	n/a	n/a
🖹 <u>wan2</u>	P2	Down	n/a	WAN	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	DHCP client	n/a	Renew
wan2_ppp	P2	Inactive	n/a	WAN	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	Dynamic	n/a	n/a
lan1	P3, P4	Down	n/a	LAN1	192.168.4.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
- <u>lan2</u>	P5	Down	n/a	LAN2	192.168.2.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
ext-wian	P6	Down	n/a	WLAN	10.59.0.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
- dmz	P7	Down	n/a	DMZ	192.168.3.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
aux	aux	Inactive	n/a	WAN	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	Dynamic	n/a	n/a
⊟ <u>wlan-1</u>	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a / n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a
wlan-1-1	n/a	Down	n/a	WLAN	10.59.1.1 / 255.255.255.0	static	n/a	n/a

Step2. Go to Configuration > Object > Address, add HQ local subnet address object for later IPSec VPN configuration use. And a range address object for later use in Policy Route configuration to route traffic to all other branch offices' local networks to VPN tunnels. This range object should cover all the branch offices' local subnets. In this case we create it as 192.168.1.0~192.168.5.255.



O 4	add 📝 Edit 🍵 Remove 📴 Object Reference		
#	Name 🔺	Туре	Address
1	DMZ_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	dmz-192.168.3.0/24
2	EXT_WLAN_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	ext-wlan-10.59.0.0/24
3	LAN1_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	lan1-192.168.4.0/24
4	LAN2_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	lan2-192.168.2.0/24
5	WLAN-1-1_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	wlan-1-1-10.59.1.0/24
6	range_br	RANGE	192.168.1.0-192.168.5.255
7	subnet_HQ	SUBNET	192.168.1.0/24
14	4 Page 1 of 1 ▷ ▷ Show 50 v items		Displaying 1 - 7 of 7

Step3. Go to Configuration > VPN > IPSec VPN > VPN Gateway, add VPN phase1 rule to build tunnel to HQ.

My Address: WAN1 IP (172.25.27.90)

Peer Gateway Address: HQ WAN IP (172.25.27.140)

General Settings					
📝 Enable					
VPN Gateway Name:	to_HQ				
Gateway Settings					
My Address					
Interface	wan1		~	DHCP clie	nt 172.25.27.90/255.255.255.0
🔘 Domain Name / IP					
Peer Gateway Address					
Static Address	Primary	172.25.27	.140		
	Secondary	0.0.0.0			
🔲 Fall back to Primary Peer Gateway	when possible				
Fall Back Check Interval:	300		(60-86	400 secon	ds)
Dynamic Address					
Authentication					
Pre-Shared Key	12345678				
Certificate	default		~	(See <u>My</u>	
Phase 1 Settings					
SA Life Time:	86400		(180 -	3000000 9	Seconds)

Step4. Go to Configuration > VPN > IPSec VPN > VPN Connection, add VPN phase2 rule to build tunnel to HQ. Local policy: local LAN1 subnet (192.168.4.0/24) Remote policy: HQ local subnet (192.168.1.0/24)



General Settings				
🔽 Enable				
Connection Name:	to_HQ			
VPN Gateway				
Application Scenario				
Site-to-site				
🔘 Site-to-site with Dynamic Peer				
Remote Access (Server Role)				
Remote Access (Client Role)				
VPN Gateway:	to_HQ	~	wan1 172.25.27.140 0.0.0.	p
Policy				
Local policy:	LAN1_SUBNET	~	INTERFACE SUBNET, 192.16	58.4.0/24
Remote policy:	subnet_HQ	~	SUBNET, 192.168.1.0/24	
Phase 2 Settings				
SA Life Time:	86400	(180 -	3000000 Seconds)	
Related Settings				
Add this VPN connection to IPSec_VPN	I zone.			
Connectivity Check				

Step5. Go to Configuration > Network > Routing>Policy Route, add a policy route rule to route traffic from local subnets to all branch offices to IPSec VPN tunnel to_HQ.

Incoming interface: LAN1 Source: LAN1_Subnet (192.168.4.0/24) Destination: range_br(192.168.1.0~192.168.5.255) Next Hop: VPN tunnel to_HQ

0	Add 📝	Edit 📋 R	emove 🧕 Acti	vate 💡 Inactiv	ate 📣 Move								
#	Status	User	Schedule	Incoming	Source	Destination	DSCP Code	Service	Next-Hop	DSCP Marking	SNAT	BWM	
1	9	any	none	■lan1	LAN1_SUBNET	■range_br	any	any	to_HQ	preserve	none	0	
K	4 Page	e 1 of :	1   🕨 🕅   Sh	ow 50 🔻 iten	15							Displaying 1 -	1 of 1

#### On Br2

Step1. Go to Monitor > System Status > Interface Status, check the interface IP information for later use in IPSec VPN configuration.



Name	Port	Status	HA Status	Zone	IP Addr/Netmask	IP Assignment	Services	Action
i <u>wan1</u>	P1	100M/Full	n/a	WAN	172.25.27.37 / 255.255.255.0	DHCP client	n/a	Renew
wan1_ppp	P1	Inactive	n/a	WAN	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	Dynamic	n/a	n/a
i⊒ <u>wan2</u>	P2	Down	n/a	WAN	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	DHCP client	n/a	Renew
wan2_ppp	P2	Inactive	n/a	WAN	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	Dynamic	n/a	n/a
🖻 opt	P3	Down	n/a	OPT	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	Static	n/a	n/a
opt_ppp	P3	Inactive	n/a	OPT	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	Dynamic	n/a	n/a
lan1	P4, P5	Up	n/a	LAN1	192.168.5.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
lan2	n/a	Down	n/a	LAN2	192.168.2.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
ext-wlan	P6	Down	n/a	WLAN	10.59.0.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
dmz	P7	Down	n/a	DMZ	192.168.3.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
aux	aux	Inactive	n/a	WAN	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	Dynamic	n/a	n/a
🖮 <u>wlan-1</u>	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a / n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a
	n/a	Down	n/a	WLAN	10.59.1.1 / 255.255.255.0	static	n/a	n/a

Step2. Go to Configuration > Object > Address, add HQ local subnet address object for later IPSec VPN configuration use. And a range address object for later use in Policy Route configuration to route traffic to all other branch offices' local networks to VPN tunnels. This range object should cover all the branch offices' local subnets. In this case we create it as 192.168.1.0~192.168.5.255.

() A	🔇 Add 📝 Edit 🍵 Remove 📠 Object Reference							
#	Name 🔺	Туре	Address					
1	DMZ_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	dmz-192.168.3.0/24					
2	EXT_WLAN_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	ext-wlan-10.59.0.0/24					
3	LAN1_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	lan1-192.168.5.0/24					
4	LAN2_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	lan2-192.168.2.0/24					
5	WLAN-1-1_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	wlan-1-1-10.59.1.0/24					
6	range_br	RANGE	192.168.1.0-192.168.5.255					
7	subnet_HQ	SUBNET	192.168.1.0/24					
14	🛛 🖣 Page 1 of 1 🕨 🕅 Show 50 🗸 items Displaying 1 - 7 of 7							

Step3. Go to Configuration > VPN > IPSec VPN > VPN Gateway, add VPN phase1 rule to build tunnel to HQ. My Address: WAN1 IP (172.25.27.37) Peer Gateway Address: HQ WAN IP (172.25.27.140)



General Settings				
🔽 Enable				
VPN Gateway Name:	to_HQ			
Gateway Settings				
My Address			_	
Interface	wan1		✓ DHCP	client 172.25.27.37/255.255.255.0
🔘 Domain Name / IP				
Peer Gateway Address				
Static Address	Primary	172.25.27.140	)	
	Secondary	0.0.0.0		
🔲 Fall back to Primary Peer Gatewa	y when possible			
Fall Back Check Interval:	300	(60	)-86400 se	conds)
Dynamic Address				
Authentication				
Pre-Shared Key	12345678			
Certificate			Y (See [	My Certificates)
Phase 1 Settings				
SA Life Time:	86400	(10	30 - 30000	00 Seconds)

Step4. Go to Configuration > VPN > IPSec VPN > VPN Connection, add VPN phase2 rule to build tunnel to HQ.

Local policy: local LAN1 subnet (192.168.5.0/24)

Remote policy: HQ local subnet (192.168.1.0/24)

General Settings			
📝 Enable			
Connection Name:	to_HQ		
VPN Gateway			
Application Scenario			
Site-to-site			
Site-to-site with Dynamic Peer			
Remote Access (Server Role)			
Remote Access (Client Role)			
VPN Gateway:	to_HQ	van1 172.25.27.140 0.0.0.0	
Policy			
Local policy:	LAN1_SUBNET	V INTERFACE SUBNET, 192.168.5.0/24	
Remote policy:	subnet_HQ	<ul> <li>SUBNET, 192.168.1.0/24</li> </ul>	
Phase 2 Settings			
SA Life Time:	86400 (18	0 - 3000000 Seconds)	
Related Settings			
Add this VPN connection to IPSec_VPN	zone.		
Connectivity Check			



Step5. Go to Configuration > Network > Routing > Policy Route, add a policy route rule to route traffic from local subnets to all branch offices to IPSec VPN tunnel to_HQ. Incoming interface: LAN1

Source: LAN1_Subnet (192.168.5.0/24) Destination: range_br(192.168.1.0~192.168.5.255) Next Hop: VPN tunnel to_HQ

٢	🔇 Add 📝 Edit 🃋 Remove 💡 Activate 💡 Inactivate 🚚 Move											
# _	Status	User	Schedule	Incoming	Source	Destination	DSCP Code	Service	Next-Hop	DSCP Marking	SNAT	B/vM
1	<b>@</b>	any	none	∎lan1	LAN1_SUBNET	■range_br	any	any	to_HQ	preserve	none	0
14										Displaying 1 - 1 of 1		

Since the SIP clients in branch offices register to the SIP server through IPSec VPN tunnels, the VoIP traffic doesn't go over NAT, we can leave SIP ALG disabled on all the USG ZyWALL.

SIP Settings			
Enable SIP ALG			
Enable SIP Transformations			
👿 Enable Configure SIP Inactivity T	imeout		
SIP Media Inactivity Timeout :	Timeout :		(seconds)
SIP Signaling Inactivity Timeout :	vity Timeout :	1800	(seconds)
SIP Signaling Port :		📀 Add	🛃 Edit 🍵 Remove
		# Po	rt 🔺
		1 50	)60

After all the settings on both the HQ and branch offices are done, dial up the tunnels.

8	🗞 Disconnect									
#	Name 🔺	Encapsulation	Policy	Algorithm	Up Time	Timeout	Inbound(Bytes)	Outbound(Bytes)		
1	to_br1	Tunnel	192.168.1.0/24<>192.168.4.0	DES/SHA1	26	86370	0(0 bytes)	0(0 bytes)		
2	to_br2	Tunnel	192.168.1.0/24⇔192.168.5.0	DES/SHA1	18	86378	0(0 bytes)	0(0 bytes)		
14										

All the VoIP clients can register to the SIP server through the VPN tunnels, and they call make VoIP calls to each other through VPN tunnels.
# 4. IPSec VPN High Availability

For nationwide or worldwide enterprise, it is always important to deploy a secure and flexible enterprise network. For example, network administrator can apply IPSec VPN for their branch offices and mobile employees to provide secured connections to headquarter.

From the secure connections, each branch office has virtual leased line through internet cloud. Hence, the enterprise has no need to pay extra expense for buying leased line(s) and can save their money on long distance call once mobile employees need to remote dial back to company.

Additionally, 7-24 operation with minimum failure time for branch offices to reach HQ through VPN is another issue to deploy enterprise networks. Network administrator can implement IPSec VPN High Availability feature to provide reliable VPN tunnels to branch offices.

To use IPSec VPN HA feature, the HQ USG should have more than one public IP. Once primary WAN IP is down, it can use secondary WAN IP to build VPN tunnels. As soon as the primary WAN IP is up again, the VPN tunnel can fall back to use the primary WAN IP.



## 4.1. Site-to-Site IPSec VPN HA/Fall Back

#### 4.1.1. Application Scenario

In the scenario below, HQ USG has two WAN IP, WAN1 and WAN2. Branch office builds IPSec VPN tunnel to HQ. IPSec VPN HA is enabled on branch USG. Primarily branch builds IPSec VPN tunnel to HQ WAN1. In case WAN1 is down, since VPN HA is enabled on branch, branch will build tunnel to HQ WAN2. Thus the branch office can enjoy a secured and reliable tunnel to HQ.

Since WAN1 has higher speed, it's HQ's primary WAN connection. We can enable VPN Fall Back on the branch. Once WAN1 is up again, branch will switch the VPN tunnel to WAN1 again.



## 4.1.2.Configuration Steps

IP address information on HQ and branch office USG:

HQ USG: WAN1 IP: 200.0.0.1 WAN2 IP: 201.0.0.1 Local subnet: 192.168.1.0/24

Branch USG: WAN IP: 202.0.0.1 Local subnet: 192.168.4.0/24

On HQ USG:

Step1. Go to Monitor > System Status > Interface Status, check the interface IP information, which will be used later in IPSec VPN configuration.



#### **ZyWALL USG Support Notes**

Name	Port	Status	HA Status	Zone	IP Addr/Netmask	IP Assignment	Services	Action
🖹 <u>wan1</u>	P1	100M/Full	n/a	WAN	200.0.0.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	n/a	n/a
wan1_ppp	P1	Inactive	n/a	WAN	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	Dynamic	n/a	n/a
🗎 <u>wan2</u>	P2	100M/Full	n/a	WAN	201.0.0.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	n/a	n/a
wan2_ppp	P2	Inactive	n/a	WAN	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	Dynamic	n/a	n/a
😑 <u>opt</u>	P3	Down	n/a	OPT	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	Static	n/a	n/a
opt_ppp	P3	Inactive	n/a	OPT	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	Dynamic	n/a	n/a
lan1	P4	100M/Full	n/a	LAN1	192.168.1.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
lan2	P5	Down	n/a	LAN2	192.168.2.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
ext-wian	P6	Down	n/a	WLAN	10.59.0.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
dmz	P7	Down	n/a	DMZ	192.168.3.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
aux	aux	Inactive	n/a	WAN	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	Dynamic	n/a	n/a
i∃ <u>wlan-1</u>	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a / n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a
wlan-1-1	n/a	Down	n/a	WLAN	10.59.1.1 / 255.255.255.0	static	n/a	n/a

Step2. Go to Configuration > Object > Address, add address object for branch office local subnet_subnet_br (192.168.4.0/24).

O A	🕲 Add 📝 Edit 🍟 Remove 🔚 Object Reference						
#	Name 🔺	Туре	Address				
1	DMZ_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	dmz-192.168.3.0/24				
2	EXT_WLAN_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	ext-wlan-10.59.0.0/24				
3	LAN1_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	lan1-192.168.1.0/24				
4	LAN2_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	lan2-192.168.2.0/24				
5	WLAN-1-1_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	wlan-1-1-10.59.1.0/24				
6	subnet_br	SUBNET	192.168.4.0/24				

Step3. Go to Configuration > VPN > IPSec VPN > VPN Gateway, add VPN phase1 rule for tunnel to branch office.

My Address: Domain Name/IP 0.0.0.0

Peer Gateway Address: Branch WAN IP (202.0.0.2)

General Settings			
📝 Enable			
VPN Gateway Name:	to_br		
Gateway Settings			
My Address			
Interface	wan1		Static 200.0.0.1/255.255.255.0
Oomain Name / IP	0.0.0.0		
Peer Gateway Address			
Static Address	Primary	202.0.0.1	
	Secondary	0.0.0.0	
📄 Fall back to Primary Peer Gateway	/ when possible	1	
Fall Back Check Interval:	300		(60-86400 seconds)
Oynamic Address			
Authentication			
Pre-Shared Key	12345678		
Certificate			✓ (See <u>My Certificates</u> )
Phase 1 Settings			
SA Life Time:	86400		(180 - 3000000 Seconds)

All contents copyright (c) 2010 ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

Step4. Go to Configuration > VPN > IPSec VPN > VPN Connection, add VPN phase2 rule for tunnel to branch USG.
Local policy: local LAN1 subnet (192.168.1.0/24)
Remote policy: Branch local subnet (192.168.4.0/24)

General Settings			
💟 Enable			
Connection Name:	to_br		
/PN Gateway			
Application Scenario			
Site-to-site			
🔘 Site-to-site with Dynamic Peer			
Remote Access (Server Role)			
Remote Access (Client Role)			
VPN Gateway:	to_br	~	0.0.0.0 202.0.0.1 0.0.0.0
Policy			
Local policy:	LAN1_SUBNET	~	INTERFACE SUBNET, 192.168.1.0/24
Remote policy:	subnet_br	~	SUBNET, 192.168.4.0/24
Phase 2 Settings			
SA Life Time:	86400	(180 -	- 3000000 Seconds)
Related Settings			
Add this VPN connection to IPSec_VPN	I zone.		

In ZLD v2.20, system will automatically create routes for VPN traffic according to VPN phase2 (VPN Connection) local/remote policy. Traffic whose source is in the local policy and destination is in the remote policy will be sent to the corresponding VPN tunnel. Thus there's no need to add policy route.

On branch USG:

Step1. Go to Monitor > System Status > Interface Status, check the interface IP information, which will be used later in IPSec VPN configuration.



#### **ZyWALL USG Support Notes**

Name	Port	Status	HA Status	Zone	IP Addr/Netmask	IP Assignment	Services	Action
🛱 <u>wan1</u>	P1	100M/Full	n/a	WAN	202.0.0.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	n/a	n/a
wan1_ppp	P1	Inactive	n/a	WAN	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	Dynamic	n/a	n/a
i⊒ <u>wan2</u>	P2	Down	n/a	WAN	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	DHCP client	n/a	Renew
wan2_ppp	P2	Inactive	n/a	WAN	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	Dynamic	n/a	n/a
- <u>lan1</u>	P3, P4	Up	n/a	LAN1	192.168.4.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
lan2	P5	Down	n/a	LAN2	192.168.2.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
ext-wian	P6	Down	n/a	WLAN	10.59.0.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
dmz	P7	Down	n/a	DMZ	192.168.3.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
aux	aux	Inactive	n/a	WAN	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	Dynamic	n/a	n/a
🗎 <u>wlan-1</u>	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a / n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a
wian-1-1	n/a	Down	n/a	WLAN	10.59.1.1 / 255.255.255.0	static	n/a	n/a

Step2. Go to Configuration > Object > Address, add address object for HQ office local subnet subnet_HQ (192.168.1.0/24).

0	Add 📝 Edit 🍵 Remove 🔚 Object Reference		
#	Name 🔺	Туре	Address
1	DMZ_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	dmz-192.168.3.0/24
2	EXT_WLAN_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	ext-wlan-10.59.0.0/24
3	LAN1_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	lan1-192.168.4.0/24
4	LAN2_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	lan2-192.168.2.0/24
5	WLAN-1-1_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	wlan-1-1-10.59.1.0/24
6	subnet_HQ	SUBNET	192.168.1.0/24
14	I Page 1 of 1 ▷ ▷ Show 50   items		Displaying 1 - 6 of 6

Step3. Go to Configuration > VPN > IPSec VPN > VPN Gateway, add VPN phase1 rule for tunnel to HQ office.

My Address: WAN IP (202.0.0.1) Peer Gateway Address: Please choose Static Address. Primary: HQ WAN1 IP (200.0.0.1)

Secondary: HQ WAN2 IP (201.0.0.1)

Enable "Fall back to Primary Peer Gateway when possible". Set "Fall Back Check Interval" a period in the range of 60s~86400s.



General Settings				
V Fnable				
VPN Gateway Name:	to HO			
	<u>-</u>			
Gateway Settings				
My Address				
Interface	wan1		~	Static 202.0.0.1/255.255.255.0
🔘 Domain Name / IP				
Peer Gateway Address				
Static Address	Primary	200.0.0.1		
	Secondary	201.0.0.1		
📝 Fall back to Primary Peer Gatewa	y when possible	:		
Fall Back Check Interval:	60		(60-86	6400 seconds)
Dynamic Address				
Authentication				
Pre-Shared Key	12345678			
Certificate	default		~	(See <u>My Certificates</u> )
Phase 1 Settings				
SA Life Time:	86400		(180 -	3000000 Seconds)

Step4. Go to Configuration > VPN > IPSec VPN > VPN Connection, add VPN phase2 rule for tunnel to HQ USG.

Local policy: local LAN1 subnet (192.168.4.0/24)

Remote policy: HQ local subnet (192.168.1.0/24)



General Settings				
🔽 Enable				
Connection Name:	to_HQ			
VPN Gateway				
Application Scenario				
Site-to-site				
🔘 Site-to-site with Dynamic Peer				
🔘 Remote Access (Server Role)				
Remote Access (Client Role)				
VPN Gateway:	to_HQ	~	wan1 200.0.0.1 201.0.0.1	
Policy				_
Local policy:	LAN1_SUBNET	~	INTERFACE SUBNET, 192.168.4.0/24	
Remote policy:	subnet_HQ	~	SUBNET, 192.168.1.0/24	
Phase 2 Settings				
SA Life Time:	86400 (	180 -	3000000 Seconds)	
Related Settings				
Add this VPN connection to IPSec_VPI	V zone.			
Connectivity Check				

In ZLD v2.20, system will automatically create routes for VPN traffic according to VPN phase2 (VPN Connection) local/remote policy. Traffic whose source is in the local policy and destination is in the remote policy will be sent to the corresponding VPN tunnel. Thus there's no need to add policy route.

#### 4.1.3. Scenario Verification

On the branch USG, dial up the tunnel to HQ.

٢	🕲 Add 📝 Edit 🍵 Remove 💡 Activate 💡 Inactivate 🍓 Connect 🦣 Disconnect ा Object Reference						
#	Status	Name	VPN Gateway	Encapsulation	Algorithm	Policy	
1	8 Gs	Default_L2TP_VPN_Connection	Default_L2TP_VPN_GW	TRANSPORT	3DES/SHA 3DES/MD5 DES/SHA	1	
2	P 😪	to_HQ	to_HQ	TUNNEL	DES/SHA	LAN1_SUBNET/4 subnet_HQ	
14	<b>4 4</b>   Page 1 of 1   ▶ ▶    Show 50 ▼ items Displaying 1 - 2 of 2						

Go to Monitor > Log, check the IKE logs, the tunnel is built up to HQ WAN1.



#### ZyWALL USG Support Notes

info	IKE	Tunnel [to_HQ:to_HQ:0xb01a8ea0] built successfully	202.0.0.1:500	200.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[HASH]	202.0.0.1:500	200.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	[SA]: [Initiator:202.0.0.1][Responder:200.0.0.1][Policy:192.168.4.0/24-192.168.1.0/24][ESP des-cbc	200.0.0.1:500	202.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Recv:[HASH][SA][NONCE][ID][ID]	200.0.0.1:500	202.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[HASH][SA][NONCE][ID][ID]	202.0.0.1:500	200.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Start Phase 2: Quick Mode	202.0.0.1:500	200.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Phase 1 IKE SA process done	202.0.0.1:500	200.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Recv:[ID][HASH]	200.0.0.1:500	202.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[ID][HASH][NOTFY:INITIAL_CONTACT]	202.0.0.1:500	200.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Recv:[KE][NONCE]	200.0.0.1:500	202.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[KE][NONCE]	202.0.0.1:500	200.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	The cookie pair is : 0xa321a4c78ef0779b / 0xb5de9e949fdc2b91 [count=8]	202.0.0.1:500	200.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Recv:[SA][VID][VID]	200.0.0.1:500	202.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	The cookie pair is : 0xa321a4c78ef0779b / 0xb5de9e949fdc2b91 [count=4]	200.0.0.1:500	202.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[SA][VID][VID]	202.0.0.1:500	200.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send Main Mode request to [200.0.0.1]	202.0.0.1:500	200.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Tunnel [to_HQ] Sending IKE request	202.0.0.1:500	200.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG

On the PC behind branch office, initiate nonstop ping to a PC behind HQ.

Ethernet	adapter ]	Local A	rea (	Conne	ction	=	
	Connectio	n-speci	fic I	NS S	uffix		:
	<b>IP</b> Address	s					: 192.168.4.33
	Subnet Mas	sk.					: 255.255.255.0
	Default Ga	ateway					: 192.168.4.1
Ethernet	adapter 3	本地连接	* <b>=</b>				
	Media Stat	te					: Media disconnected
C:\Docum	ents and S	Setting	s∖Adr	ninis	trato	r>pi	ng 192.168.1.34 -t
Pinging	192.168.1	.34 wit	h 32	byte	s of	data	:
Reply fr	om 192.168	8.1.34:	byte	es=32	time	=4ms	TTL=125
Reply fr	om 192.16	8.1.34:	byte	es=32	time	=3ms	TTL=125
Reply fr	om 192.16	8.1.34:	byte	es=32	time	=3ms	TTL=125
Reply fr	om 192.16	8.1.34:	byte	es=32	time	=3ms	TTL=125
Reply fr	om 192.168	8.1.34:	byte	es=32	time	=3ms	TTL=125
Reply fr	om 192.168	8.1.34:	byte	es=32	time	=3ms	TTL=125
Reply fr	om 192.168	8.1.34:	byte	es=32	time	=3ms	TTL=125

Unplug WAN1 of HQ, the ping times out (tunnel disconnected). After several timeouts, the ping resumes. The VPN tunnel is built up again.

Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes = 32 time = 3ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes = 32 time = 3ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes = 32 time = 3ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes = 32 time = 3ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes = 32 time = 3ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes = 32 time = 3ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes = 32 time = 3ms TTL=125 Request timed out. Request timed out. Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	
Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=4ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125 Request timed out. Request timed out. Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time	Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125
Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=4ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125 Request timed out. Request timed out. Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.3	Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125
Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125         Request timed out.         Request timed out. <td>Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=4ms TTL=125</td>	Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=4ms TTL=125
Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125 Request timed out. Request timed out. Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=4ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125
Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125 Request timed out. Request timed out. Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=4ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125 Reply from 192	Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125
Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125 Request timed out. Request timed out. Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125
Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125 Request timed out. Request timed out. Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125
Request timed out. Request timed out. Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes	Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125
Request timed out. Request timed out. Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=4ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32	Request timed out.
Request timed out. Request timed out. Reques	Request timed out.
Request timed out. Request timed out. Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=4ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125 Reply from	Request timed out.
Request timed out. Request timed out. Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=4ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes	Request timed out.
Request timed out. Request timed out. Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=4ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	Request timed out.
Request timed out. Request timed out. Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=4ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL	Request timed out.
Request timed out. Request timed out. Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=4ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	Request timed out.
Request timed out. Request timed out. Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=4ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms	Request timed out.
Request timed out. Request timed out. Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=4ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	Request timed out.
Request timed out. Request timed out. Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=4ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	Request timed out.
Request timed out. Request timed out. Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=4ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	Request timed out.
Request timed out. Request timed out. Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=4ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	Request timed out.
Request timed out. Request timed out. Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=4ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	Request timed out.
Request timed out. Request timed out. Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=4ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	Request timed out.
Request timed out. Request timed out. Request timed out. Request timed out. Request timed out. Request timed out. Request timed out. Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=4ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	Request timed out.
Request timed out. Request timed out. Request timed out. Request timed out. Request timed out. Request timed out. Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=4ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	Request timed out.
Request timed out. Request timed out. Request timed out. Request timed out. Request timed out. Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=4ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	Request timed out.
Request timed out. Request timed out. Request timed out. Request timed out. Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=4ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	Request timed out.
Request timed out. Request timed out. Request timed out. Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=4ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	Request timed out.
Request timed out. Request timed out. Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=4ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	Request timed out.
Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=4ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	Request timed out.
Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=4ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	nequest timed out. Benly from 192 168 1 34: butes=32 time=4ms TTL=125
Reply from 172.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	$\begin{array}{c} \text{Reply from 172.100.1.34. bytes=32 time=3ms fill=123} \\ \text{Reply from 192.168.1.34. bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125} \\ \end{array}$
Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes 32 time 3ms 111-125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	Reply from 172.100.1.34. bytes=32 time=3ms 110-123 Reply from 192 168 1 34: butes=32 time=3ms TTL=125
Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	Reply from 172.100.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms 110-123 Reply from 192 168 1 34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125
Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes 32 time= $3ms$ TTL=125 Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time= $3ms$ TTL=125
Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	Renly from 192.168.1.34: hytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125
	Reply from 192.168.1.34: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125

On the branch USG, go to Monitor>Log, check the IKE logs. You will find the tunnel is built up with USG WAN2.

#### ZyWALL USG Support Notes

info	IKE	Fall Back [to_HQ] will start fall back after 60 seconds			IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Tunnel [to_HQ:to_HQ:0xd7f87fe6] built successfully	202.0.0.1:500	201.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[HASH]	202.0.0.1:500	201.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	[SA]: [Initiator:202.0.0.1][Responder:201.0.0.1][Policy:192.168.4.0/24-192.168.1.0/24][ESP des-cbc	201.0.0.1:500	202.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Recv:[HASH][SA][NONCE][ID][ID]	201.0.0.1:500	202.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[HASH][SA][NONCE][ID][ID]	202.0.0.1:500	201.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Start Phase 2: Quick Mode	202.0.0.1:500	201.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Tunnel [to_HQ:0xb01a8ea0] is disconnected	202.0.0.1:4500	200.0.0.1	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Phase 1 IKE SA process done	202.0.0.1:500	201.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Recv:[ID][HASH]	201.0.0.1:500	202.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[ID][HASH][NOTFY:INITIAL_CONTACT]	202.0.0.1:500	201.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Recv:[KE][NONCE]	201.0.0.1:500	202.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[KE][NONCE]	202.0.0.1:500	201.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	The cookie pair is : 0x419ced51c879c1a2 / 0x46d55f76fc4512df [count=8]	202.0.0.1:500	201.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Recv:[SA][VID][VID]	201.0.0.1:500	202.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	The cookie pair is : 0x419ced51c879c1a2 / 0x46d55f76fc4512df [count=4]	201.0.0.1:500	202.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[SA][VID][VID]	202.0.0.1:500	201.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send Main Mode request to [201.0.0.1]	202.0.0.1:500	201.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Tunnel [to_HQ] Sending IKE request	202.0.0.1:500	201.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	The cookie pair is : 0x419ced51c879c1a2 / 0x00000000000000000 [count=2]	202.0.0.1:500	201.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	ISAKMP SA [to_HQ] is disconnected	202.0.0.1:500	200.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	The cookie pair is : 0x03060945357dbaf6 / 0x00000000000000000	202.0.0.1:500	200.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	IKE Packet Retransmit	202.0.0.1:500	200.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	The cookie pair is : 0x03060945357dbaf6 / 0x0000000000000000	202.0.0.1:500	200.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	IKE Packet Retransmit	202.0.0.1:500	200.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	The cookie pair is : 0x03060945357dbaf6 / 0x0000000000000000	202.0.0.1:500	200.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	IKE Packet Retransmit [count=4]	202.0.0.1:500	200.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG

Plug back HQ USG WAN1, the tunnel will fall back to the HQ USG WAN1.

Reply	from	192.168.1.34:	bytes=32	time=3ms	TTL=125
Reply	from	192.168.1.34:	bytes=32	time=3ms	TTL=125
Reply	from	192.168.1.34:	bytes=32	time=3ms	TTL=125
Reply	from	192.168.1.34:	bytes=32	time=3ms	TTL=125
Reply	from	192.168.1.34:	bytes=32	time=3ms	TTL=125
Reply	from	192.168.1.34:	bytes=32	time=4ms	TTL=125
Reply	from	192.168.1.34:	bytes=32	time=3ms	TTL=125
Reply	from	192.168.1.34:	bytes=32	time=3ms	TTL=125
Reply	from	192.168.1.34:	bytes=32	time=3ms	TTL=125
Reply	from	192.168.1.34:	bytes=32	time=3ms	TTL=125
Reply	from	192.168.1.34:	bytes=32	time=3ms	TTL=125
Reply	from	192.168.1.34:	bytes=32	time=4ms	TTL=125
Reques	st tin	ned out.			
Reply	from	192.168.1.34:	bytes=32	time=4ms	TTL=125
Reply	from	192.168.1.34:	bytes=32	time=3ms	TTL=125
Reply	from	192.168.1.34:	bytes=32	time=3ms	TTL=125
Reply	from	192.168.1.34:	bytes=32	time=3ms	TTL=125
Reply	from	192.168.1.34:	bytes=32	time=3ms	TTL=125
Reply	from	192.168.1.34:	bytes=32	time=3ms	TTL=125
Reply	from	192.168.1.34:	bytes=32	time=4ms	TTL=125
Reply	from	192.168.1.34:	bytes=32	time=3ms	TTL=125
Reply	from	192.168.1.34:	bytes=32	time=3ms	TTL=125
Dan 1.		100 100 1 01-	1	+	TTI.=195
vehrà	from	192.168.1.34:	bytes=32	cime-ams	116-125
Reply	from from	192.168.1.34: 192.168.1.34:	bytes=32 bytes=32	time=3ms time=3ms	TTL=125
Reply Reply Repl <u>y</u>	from from from	192.168.1.34: 192.168.1.34: 192.168.1.34:	bytes=32 bytes=32 bytes=32	time=3ms time=3ms time=3ms	TTL=125 TTL=125 TTL=125

On Branch USG, go to Monitor > Log, check the IKE logs, you will find the tunnel



#### fall back (built to) the HQ USG WAN1 again.

info	IVE	ISAVMP SA Ita HOLia disconnected	202.0.0.1.500	201.0.0.1.500	IKE LOG
into		ISAAWIF SA (to_) toj is uisconnected	202.0.0.1.300	201.0.0.1.300	INE LOO
into	INC.	Fail Back [to_no] to primary peer gateway successfully at the fifth time			IKE_LOG
Info	IKE	Tunnel [to_HQ:to_HQ:Uxd/18/166:Uxbc3a3dc] rekeyed successfully	202.0.0.1:500	200.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Fall Back [to_HQ] is continue install SA.			IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Fall Back [to_HQ] send delete SA packet successfully			IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[HASH][DEL]	202.0.0.1:500	201.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	The cookie pair is : 0x419ced51c879c1a2 / 0x46d55f76fc4512df [count=2]	202.0.0.1:500	201.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Fall Back [to_HQ] is suspended to send delete sa packet to secondary peer gateway			IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[HASH]	202.0.0.1:500	200.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	[SA]: [Initiator:202.0.0.1][Responder:200.0.0.1][Policy:192.168.4.0/24-192.168.1.0/24][ESP des-cbc	200.0.0.1:500	202.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Recv:[HASH][SA][NONCE][ID][ID]	200.0.0.1:500	202.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[HASH][SA][NONCE][ID][ID]	202.0.0.1:500	200.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Start Phase 2: Quick Mode	202.0.0.1:500	200.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Phase 1 IKE SA process done	202.0.0.1:500	200.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Recv.[ID][HASH]	200.0.0.1:500	202.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[ID][HASH][NOTFY:INITIAL_CONTACT]	202.0.0.1:500	200.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Recv.[KE][NONCE]	200.0.0.1:500	202.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[KE][NONCE]	202.0.0.1:500	200.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	The cookie pair is : 0x32487b5d8b0404e8 / 0x1b4d12360b06766f [count=8]	202.0.0.1:500	200.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Recv:[SA][VID][VID]	200.0.0.1:500	202.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	The cookie pair is : 0x32487b5d8b0404e8 / 0x1b4d12360b06766f [count=4]	200.0.0.1:500	202.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	IKE Packet Retransmit [count=2]	202.0.0.1:500	200.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[SA][VID][VID]	202.0.0.1:500	200.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send Main Mode request to [200.0.0.1]	202.0.0.1:500	200.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Tunnel [to_HQ] Sending IKE request	202.0.0.1:500	200.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	The cookie pair is : 0x32487b5d8b0404e8 / 0x000000000000000000 [count=4]	202.0.0.1:500	200.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Fall Back [to_HQ] will start fall back after 60 seconds			IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Tunnel [to_HQ:to_HQ:0xd7f87fe6] built successfully	202.0.0.1:500	201.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG

## 4.2. IPSec VPN Fail Over and Fall Back

#### 4.2.1. Application Scenario

In the below enterprise network, HQ has two WAN connections. WAN1 is connected to internet while WAN2 is connected to a leased line. Branch office 1 requires a secured connection to HQ with minimum failure time. We can deploy IPSec VPN HA to meet Branch office 1's requirement.

However, since HQ WAN2 is connected to a leased line, it cannot be reached from internet, making building VPN tunnel from Br1 to HQ's WAN2 not possible. Branch office 2's WAN2 is also connected to the leased line. Br2 can reach HQ WAN2. We can use Br2 USG to route VPN traffic from Br1 to HQ. Once HQ WAN1 is done, Br1 can first build a tunnel to Br2 WAN1. Then Br2 WAN2 builds a tunnel to HQ WAN2. Traffic from Br1 to HQ can first go to Br2 through VPN tunnel, then go to HQ through the other VPN tunnel from Br2 to HQ.

We can enable HA Fall Back. Once HQ USG WAN1 is up again, Br1 can build tunnel



#### directly to HQ again.



### 4.2.2.Configuration Steps

IP information of HQ and branch offices:

HQ USG: WAN1 IP: 200.0.0.2 WAN2 IP: 10.0.0.1 Local subnet: 192.168.1.0/24

Br1 USG: WAN IP: 201.0.0.2 Local subnet: 192.168.4.0/24

Br2 USG: WAN1 IP: 201.0.0.2 WAN2 IP: 10.0.0.2 Local subnet: 192.168.5.0/24

On HQ USG:

Step1. Go to Monitor > System Status > Interface Status, check the IP address information for later use in IPSec configuration.



Name	Port	Status	HA Status	Zone	IP Addr/Netmask	IP Assignment	Services	Action
😑 wan1	P1	100M/Full	n/a	WAN	200.0.0.2 / 255.255.255.0	Static	n/a	n/a
wan1_ppp	P1	Inactive	n/a	WAN	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	Dynamic	n/a	n/a
🗎 <u>wan2</u>	P2	100M/Full	n/a	WAN	10.0.0.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	n/a	n/a
wan2_ppp	P2	Inactive	n/a	WAN	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	Dynamic	n/a	n/a
🚊 <u>opt</u>	P3	Down	n/a	OPT	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	Static	n/a	n/a
opt_ppp	P3	Inactive	n/a	OPT	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	Dynamic	n/a	n/a
lan1	P4, P5, P6	Down	n/a	LAN1	192.168.1.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
<u>lan2</u>	n/a	Down	n/a	LAN2	192.168.2.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
ext-wian	n/a	Down	n/a	WLAN	10.59.0.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
dmz	P7	Down	n/a	DMZ	192.168.3.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
aux	aux	Inactive	n/a	WAN	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	Dynamic	n/a	n/a
⊡ <u>wlan-1</u>	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a / n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a
wian-1-1	n/a	Down	n/a	WLAN	10.59.1.1 / 255.255.255.0	static	n/a	n/a

Step2. Go to Configuration > Object > Address, add address object for Br1 subnet. Subnet_br1 (192.168.4.0/24)

O A	🔕 Add 📝 Edit 🍟 Remove 🔚 Object Reference								
#	Name 🔺	Туре	Address						
1	DMZ_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	dmz-192.168.3.0/24						
2	EXT_WLAN_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	ext-wlan-10.59.0.0/24						
3	LAN1_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	lan1-192.168.1.0/24						
4	LAN2_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	lan2-192.168.2.0/24						
5	WLAN-1-1_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	wlan-1-1-10.59.1.0/24						
6	subnet_br1	SUBNET	192.168.4.0/24						
14	Page 1 of 1 🕨 🕨 Show 50 🗸 items		Displaying 1 - 6 of 6						

Step3. Go to Configuration > VPN > IPSec VPN > VPN Gateway, add phase 1 rule. Since when WAN1 is up, it uses WAN1 to build VPN tunnel, when WAN1 is down, it uses WAN2 to build VPN tunnel, My Address should be set as 0.0.0.0. When WAN1 is up, peer IP is Br1 WAN IP. When WAN1 is down, it uses WAN2 to build VPN tunnel, peer IP is Br2 WAN2 IP. So Peer Gateway Address should be set as Dynamic Address.



General Settings		
📝 Enable		
VPN Gateway Name:	to_br1	
Gateway Settings		
My Address		
Interface	wan1 🗸 Static 200.0.0	
Oomain Name / IP	0.0.0.0	
Peer Gateway Address		
Static Address	Primary 0.0.0.0	
	Secondary 0.0.0.0	
📄 Fall back to Primary Peer Gatew	ay when possible	
Fall Back Check Interval:	300 (60-8640 <mark>0</mark> seconds)	
Oynamic Address		
Authentication		
Pre-Shared Key	12345678	
Certificate	default 🗸 (See My Certific	ates)
Phase 1 Settings		
SA Life Time:	86400 (180 - 3000000 Seconds	;)

Step4. Go to Configuration > VPN > IPSec VPN > VPN Connnection, add phase2 rule.

Local policy: Local LAN1 subnet (192.168.1.0/24) Remote policy: Br1 local subnet (192.168.4.0/24)



General Settings		
📝 Enable		
Connection Name:	to_br1	
VPN Gateway		
Application Scenario		
Site-to-site		
Site-to-site with Dynamic Peer		
Remote Access (Server Role)		
Remote Access (Client Role)		
VPN Gateway:	to_br1 👻	0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
Policy		
Local policy:	LAN1_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET, 192.168.1.0/24
Remote policy:	subnet_br1 🗸	SUBNET, 192.168.4.0/24
Phase 2 Settings		
SA Life Time:	86400 (180	- 3000000 Seconds)
Related Settings		
Add this VPN connection to IPSec_VPN	zone.	
Connectivity Check		

On Br1 USG:

Step1. Go to Monitor > System Status > Interface Status, check the IP address information for later use in IPSec configuration.

Name	Port	Status	HA Status	Zone	IP Addr/Netmask	IP Assignment	Services	Action
🗎 wan1	P1	100M/Full	n/a	WAN	201.0.0.2 / 255.255.255.0	Static	n/a	n/a
wan1_ppp	P1	Inactive	n/a	WAN	0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0	Dynamic	n/a	n/a
i⊒ <u>wan2</u>	P2	Down	n/a	WAN	0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0	DHCP client	n/a	Renew
wan2_ppp	P2	Inactive	n/a	WAN	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	Dynamic	n/a	n/a
lan1	P3, P4	Up	n/a	LAN1	192.168.4.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
lan2	P5	Down	n/a	LAN2	0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
ext-wlan	P6	Down	n/a	WLAN	10.59.0.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
dmz	P7	Down	n/a	DMZ	192.168.3.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
br0	n/a	Down	n/a	n/a	0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0	Static	n/a	n/a
- aux	aux	Inactive	n/a	WAN	0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0	Dynamic	n/a	n/a
🖹 <u>wlan-1</u>	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a / n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a
wlan-1-1	n/a	Down	n/a	WLAN	10.59.1.1 / 255.255.255.0	static	n/a	n/a

Step2. Go to Configuration > Object > Address, add address object for HQ local subnet, subnet_HQ (192.168.1.0/24).

0	🕲 Add 📝 Edit 🍵 Remove 📴 Object Reference								
#	Name 🔺	Туре	Address						
1	DMZ_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	dmz-192.168.3.0/24						
2	EXT_WLAN_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	ext-wlan-10.59.0.0/24						
3	LAN1_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	lan1-192.168.4.0/24						
4	LAN2_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	lan2-0.0.0.0/32						
5	WLAN-1-1_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	wlan-1-1-10.59.1.0/24						
6	subnet_HQ	SUBNET	192.168.1.0/24						
14	Page 1 of 1 > > Show 50 vitems		Displaying 1 - 6 of 6						

All contents copyright (c) 2010 ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

Step3. Go to Configuration > VPN > IPSec VPN > VPN Gateway, add phase 1 rule.
My Address: WAN IP (201.0.0.2)
Peer Gateway Address:
To deploy VPN HA, please choose Static Address.
Primary peer gateway: HQ WAN1 IP (200.0.0.2)
Secondary peer gateway: Br1 WAN1 IP (202.0.0.2)
Enable Fall Back to Primary Gateway when possible, and set a Fall Back check interval in the range of 60s~86400s.

General Settings							
🔽 Enable							
VPN Gateway Name:	to_HQ						
Gateway Settings							
My Address							
Interface	wan1		~	Static -	- 201.0.0.	2/255.255.	255.0
🔘 Domain Name / IP							
Peer Gateway Address							
Static Address	Primary	200.0.0.2					
	Secondary	202.0.0.2					
📝 Fall back to Primary Peer Gateway	when possible						
Fall Back Check Interval:	60		(60-86	400 seco	onds)		
Dynamic Address							
Authentication							
Pre-Shared Key	12345678						
Certificate	default		~	(See <u>M</u>	y Certifica		
Phase 1 Settings							
SA Life Time:	86400		(180 -	3000000	0 Seconds)	)	

Step4. Go to Configuration > VPN >IPSec VPN > VPN Connection, add phase 2 VPN rule.

Local policy: Local LAN1 subnet (192.168.4.0/24) Remote policy: HQ local subnet (192.168.1.0/24)



General Settings		
🔽 Enable		
Connection Name:	to_HQ	
VPN Gateway		
Application Scenario		
Site-to-site		
Site-to-site with Dynamic Peer		
🔘 Remote Access (Server Role)		
Remote Access (Client Role)		
VPN Gateway:	to_HQ 🗸	wan1 200.0.0.2 202.0.0.2
Policy		
Local policy:	LAN1_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET, 192.168.4.0/24
Remote policy:	subnet_HQ 🗸	SUBNET, 192.168.1.0/24
Phase 2 Settings		
SA Life Time:	86400 (180 -	3000000 Seconds)
Related Settings		
Add this VPN connection to IPSec_VPN a	zone,	
Connectivity Check		
On Br2 USG:		

Step1. Go to Monitor > System Status > Interface Status, check the IP address information for later use in IPSec configuration.

Name	Port	Status	HA Status	Zone	IP Addr/Netmask	IP Assignment	Services	Action
🚊 <u>wan1</u>	P1	100M/Full	n/a	WAN	202.0.0.2 / 255.255.255.0	Static	n/a	n/a
wan1_ppp	P1	Inactive	n/a	WAN	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	Dynamic	n/a	n/a
🖨 <u>wan2</u>	P2	100M/Full	n/a	WAN	10.0.0.2 / 255.255.255.0	Static	n/a	n/a
wan2_ppp	P2	Inactive	n/a	WAN	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	Dynamic	n/a	n/a
🖨 opt	P3	Down	n/a	OPT	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	Static	n/a	n/a
opt_ppp	P3	Inactive	n/a	OPT	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	Dynamic	n/a	n/a
lan1	P4	Down	n/a	LAN1	192.168.5.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
lan2	P5	Down	n/a	LAN2	192.168.2.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
ext-wlan	P6	Down	n/a	WLAN	10.59.0.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
dmz	P7	Down	n/a	DMZ	192.168.3.1 / 255.255.255.0	Static	DHCP server	n/a
aux	aux	Inactive	n/a	WAN	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0	Dynamic	n/a	n/a
⊟: <u>wlan-1</u>	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a / n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a
wian-1-1	n/a	Down	n/a	WLAN	10.59.1.1 / 255.255.255.0	static	n/a	n/a

Step2. Go to Configuration > Object > Address, add address objects for HQ local subnet and Br1 local subnet.

HQ local subnet: subnet_HQ (192.168.1.0/24).

Br1 local subnet: subnet_br1 (192.168.4.0/24)



() A	🕽 Add 📝 Edit 🁕 Remove 🔚 Object Reference										
#	Name 🔺	Туре	Address								
1	DMZ_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	dmz-192.168.3.0/24								
2	EXT_WLAN_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	ext-wlan-10.59.0.0/24								
3	LAN1_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	lan1-192.168.5.0/24								
4	LAN2_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	lan2-192.168.2.0/24								
5	WLAN-1-1_SUBNET	INTERFACE SUBNET	wlan-1-1-10.59.1.0/24								
6	subnet_HQ	SUBNET	192.168.1.0/24								
7	subnet_br1	SUBNET	192.168.4.0/24								
4 4   Page 1 of 1   ▶    Show 50 ∨ items Displaying :											

Step3. Go to Configuration > VPN > IPSec VPN > VPN Gateway, add phase 1 VPN rules.

Tunnel to Br1 phase1 rule: My Address: WAN1 IP (202.0.0.2) Peer Gateway Address: Br1 WAN IP (201.0.0.2)

General Settings					
🔽 Enable					
VPN Gateway Name:	to_br1				
Gateway Settings					
My Address					
Interface	wan1		~	Static	202.0.0.2/255.255.255.0
🔘 Domain Name / IP					
Peer Gateway Address					
Static Address	Primary	201.0.0.2			
	Secondary	0.0.0.0			
📄 Fall back to Primary Peer Gateway	when possible				
Fall Back Check Interval:	300		(60-86	400 secor	nds)
Oynamic Address					
Authentication					
Pre-Shared Key	12345678				
🔘 Certificate			•	(See <u>My</u>	
Phase 1 Settings					
SA Life Time:	86400		(180 -	3000000	Seconds)

Tunnel to HQ phase1 rule: My Address: WAN2 IP (10.0.0.2) Peer Gateway Address: HQ WAN2 IP (10.0.0.1)



General Settings		
🔽 Enable		
VPN Gateway Name:	to_HQ	
Gateway Settings		
My Address		
Interface	wan2	✓ Static 10.0.0.2/255.255.255.0
🔘 Domain Name / IP		
Peer Gateway Address		
Static Address	Primary	10.0.0.1
	Secondary	0.0.0.0
📄 Fall back to Primary Peer Gati	eway when possible	e
Fall Back Check Interval:	300	(60-86400 seconds)
Dynamic Address		
Authentication		
Pre-Shared Key	12345678	
🔘 Certificate	default	✓ (See <u>My Certificates</u> )
Phase 1 Settings		
SA Life Time:	86400	(180 - 3000000 Seconds)

Step4. Go to Configuration > VPN > IPSec VPN > VPN Connection, add phase 2 VPN rules.

Tunnel to Br1 phase2 rule:

Local policy: HQ local subnet (192.168.1.0/24)

Remote policy: Br1 local subnet (192.168.4.0/24)



General Settings			
🔽 Enable			
Connection Name:	to_br1		
VPN Gateway			
Application Scenario			
Site-to-site			
Site-to-site with Dynamic Peer			
Remote Access (Server Role)			
Remote Access (Client Role)			
VPN Gateway:	to_br1	~	wan1 201.0.0.2 0.0.0.0
Policy			
Local policy:	subnet_HQ	~	SUBNET, 192.168.1.0/24
Remote policy:	subnet_br1	~	SUBNET, 192.168.4.0/24
Phase 2 Settings			
SA Life Time:	86400 (	180	- 3000000 Seconds)
Related Settings			
Add this VPN connection to IPSec_VPN	I zone.		
Connectivity Check			

Tunnel to HQ phase2 rule: Local policy: Br1 local subnet (192.168.4.0/24) Remote policy: HQ local subnet (192.168.1.0/24)



Seneral Settings			
Connection Name:	to_HQ		
/PN Gateway			
Application Scenario			
Site-to-site			
🔘 Site-to-site with Dynamic Peer			
Remote Access (Server Role)			
Remote Access (Client Role)			
VPN Gateway:	to_HQ	~	wan2 10.0.0.1 0.0.0.0
Policy			
Local policy:	subnet_br1	~	SUBNET, 192.168.4.0/24
Remote policy:	subnet_HQ	*	SUBNET, 192.168.1.0/24
hase 2 Settings			
SA Life Time:	86400	(180	- 3000000 Seconds)
Related Settings			
Add this VPN connection to IPSec_V	PN zone.		
Connectivity Check			

Step5. Go to Configuration > Network > Routing > Policy Route, add policy routes to route traffic from Br1 to HQ through VPN tunnels, as well as traffic from HQ to Br1 through VPN tunnels.

For traffic from Br1 local subnet to HQ local subnet: Incoming interface: VPN tunnel to_br1 Source: Br1 local subnet subnet_br1 (192.168.4.0/24) Destination: HQ local subnet subnet_HQ (192.168.1.0/24) Next-Hop: VPN tunnel to_HQ

O 4	) Add 📝 Edit 🍟 Remove 💡 Activate 💡 Inactivate 🚚 Move											
# 🔺	Status	User	Schedule	Incoming	Source	Destination	DSCP Code	Service	Next-Hop	DSCP Marking	SNAT	BWM
1	<b>@</b>	any	none	to_HQ	subnet_HQ	subnet_br1	any	any	to_br1	preserve	none	0
2	0	any	none	to_br1	subnet_br1	■subnet_HQ	any	any	to_HQ	preserve	none	0
3	<b>@</b>	any	none	■lan1	LAN1_SUBNET	any	any	any	■WAN_TRUNK	preserve	outgoing-interface	0
4	<b>@</b>	any	none	■lan2	LAN2_SUBNET	any	any	any	<pre>NVAN_TRUNK</pre>	preserve	outgoing-interface	0
5	<b>@</b>	any	none	■ dmz	DMZ_SUBNET	any	any	any	<pre>www.trunk</pre>	preserve	outgoing-interface	0
6	<b>@</b>	any	none	ext-wian	<pre>ext_wlan_sub</pre>	any	any	any	<pre>■VVAN_TRUNK</pre>	preserve	outgoing-interface	0
7	<b>@</b>	any	none	• wlan-1-1	any	any	any	any	<pre> • VVAN_TRUNK </pre>	preserve	outgoing-interface	0
14	✓         Page 1 of 1 → →         Show 50 v items         Displaying 1 - 7 of 7											

For traffic from HQ local subnet to Br1 local subnet: Incoming interface: VPN tunnel to_HQ Source: HQ local subnet subnet_HQ Destination: Br1 local subnet subnet_Br1 Next-Hop: VPN tunnel to_Br1.

O A	) Add 📝 Edit 🃋 Remove 💡 Activate 💡 Inactivate 🚚 Move											
# 🔺	Status	User	Schedule	Incoming	Source	Destination	DSCP Code	Service	Next-Hop	DSCP Marking	SNAT	BWM
1	9	any	none	to_HQ	■subnet_HQ	subnet_br1	any	any	to_br1	preserve	none	0
2	<b>@</b>	any	none	to_br1	subnet_br1	subnet_HQ	any	any	to_HQ	preserve	none	0
3	9	any	none	≂lan1	LAN1_SUBNET	any	any	any	<pre>NUNK</pre>	preserve	outgoing-interface	0
4	9	any	none	■lan2	LAN2_SUBNET	any	any	any	<pre>=VVAN_TRUNK</pre>	preserve	outgoing-interface	0
5	0	any	none	ª dmz	DMZ_SUBNET	any	any	any	■VVAN_TRUNK	preserve	outgoing-interface	0
6	0	any	none	ext-wian	<pre>ext_wlan_subh</pre>	any	any	any	■WAN_TRUNK	preserve	outgoing-interface	0
7	0	any	none	■ wlan-1-1	any	any	any	any	<pre>NVAN_TRUNK</pre>	preserve	outgoing-interface	0
14	I Page	1 of 1	L 🕨 🕨 Sha	w 50 🗸 item	ns						Displa	aying 1 - 7

After all the steps above, the configuration for this application scenario is done.

### 4.2.3. Scenario Verification

On Br1, dial up the tunnel to HQ.

٢	🕽 Add 📝 Edit 🃋 Remove 💡 Activate 😡 Inactivate 🚷 Connect 🚷 Disconnect ा Object Reference								
#	Status	Name	VPN Gateway	Encapsulation	Algorithm	Policy			
1	ତ୍ୱ 🚱	Default_L2TP_VPN_Connection	Default_L2TP_VPN_GW	TRANSPORT	3DES/SHA 3DES/MD5 DES/SHA	1			
2	ତ୍ର 💩	to_HQ	to_HQ	TUNNEL	DES/SHA	LAN1_SUBNET/4 subnet_HQ			
14	Page 1 of 1 >> >> Show 50 >> items Displaying 1 - 2 of 2 Displaying 1 - 2 of 2								

Go to Monitor > Log, check the IKE logs, the tunnel is built up to HQ WAN1.

info l	IKE	The cookie pair is : 0x07e7bbdd669e8334 / 0xac9bb1d6f47f2839 [count=4]	201.0.0.2:500	200.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info l	IKE	Tunnel [to_HQ:to_HQ:0xdd670c2e] built successfully	201.0.0.2:500	200.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info l	IKE	Send:[HASH]	201.0.0.2:500	200.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info l	IKE	[SA]: [Initiator:201.0.0.2][Responder:200.0.0.2][Policy:192.168.4.0/24-192.168.1.0/24][ESP des-cl	200.0.0.2:500	201.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info l	IKE	Recv:[HASH][SA][NONCE][ID][ID]	200.0.0.2:500	201.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info l	IKE	The cookie pair is : 0x07e7bbdd669e8334 / 0xac9bb1d6f47f2839	200.0.0.2:500	201.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info l	IKE	Send:[HASH][SA][NONCE][ID][ID]	201.0.0.2:500	200.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info l	IKE	Start Phase 2: Quick Mode	201.0.0.2:500	200.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info l	IKE	The cookie pair is : 0x07e7bbdd669e8334 / 0xac9bb1d6f47f2839 [count=5]	201.0.0.2:500	200.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG

On a PC behind branch office, initiate nonstop ping to a PC behind HQ.

# ZyXEL

Ethernet	; adapter Local Area Connection:	
	Connection-specific DNS Suffix . : IP Address : 192.168.4.33 Subnet Mask : 255.255.255.0 Default Gateway : 192.168.4.1	
Ethernet	; adapter 本地连接:	
	Media State Media disconnecte	ed
C: Docur	nents and Settings\Administrator>ping 192.168.1.33 -t	
Pinging	192.168.1.33 with 32 bytes of data:	
Request	timed out.	
Reply fr	•om 192.168.1.33: bytes=32 time=4ms TTL=125	
Reply fr	om 192.168.1.33: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	
Reply fr	om 192.168.1.33: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	
Reply fr	om 192.168.1.33: bytes=32 time=4ms TTL=125	
Reply fr	om 192.168.1.33: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	
Reply fr	om 192.168.1.33: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	
Reply fr	om 192.168.1.33: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	
Reply fr	om 192.168.1.33: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	
Reply fr	om 192.168.1.33: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	
Reply fr	om 192.168.1.33: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	
Reply fr	om 192.168.1.33: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	
Reply fr	•om 192.168.1.33: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	
Reply fr	rom 192.168.1.33: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	
Reply fr	om 192.168.1.33: bytes=32 time=3ms TTL=125	

Unplug HQ USG WAN1, the ping times out (tunnel disconnected). After a while, the ping resumes. The VPN tunnel is built up again.

Reply from 192.168.1.33:	bytes=32	time=3ms	TTL=125
Reply from 192.168.1.33:	bytes=32	time=3ms	TTL=125
Reply from 192.168.1.33:	bytes=32	time=3ms	TTL=125
Reply from 192.168.1.33:	bytes=32	time=3ms	TTL=125
Reply from 192.168.1.33:	bytes=32	time=3ms	TTL=125
Request timed out.			
Reply from 192.168.1.33:	bytes=32	time=7ms	TTL=123
Reply from 192.168.1.33:	bytes=32	time=5ms	TTL=123
Reply from 192.168.1.33:	bytes=32	time=5ms	TTL=123

On Br1, go to Monitor > Log, check the IKE logs. You will find the tunnel is built successfully to Br2 WAN1 (202.0.0.2).

info	IKE	Fall Back [to_HQ] will start fall back after 60 seconds			IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Tunnel [to_HQ:to_HQ:0x88f2559a] built successfully	201.0.0.2:500	202.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[HASH]	201.0.0.2:500	202.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	[SA]: [Initiator:201.0.0.2][Responder:202.0.0.2][Policy:192.168.4.0/24-192.168.1.0/24][ESP des-c	202.0.0.2:500	201.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Recv:[HASH][SA][NONCE][ID][ID]	202.0.0.2:500	201.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[HASH][SA][NONCE][ID][ID]	201.0.0.2:500	202.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Start Phase 2: Quick Mode	201.0.0.2:500	202.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Tunnel [to_HQ:0x79759b9] is disconnected	201.0.0.2:4500	200.0.0.2	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Phase 1 IKE SA process done	201.0.0.2:500	202.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Recv.[ID][HASH]	202.0.0.2:500	201.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[ID][HASH][NOTFY:INITIAL_CONTACT]	201.0.0.2:500	202.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Recv.[KE][NONCE]	202.0.0.2:500	201.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[KE][NONCE]	201.0.0.2:500	202.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	The cookie pair is : 0x38db3478ae0c0ccc / 0x3895d3e24680ecf6 [count=8]	201.0.0.2:500	202.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Recv:[SA][VID][VID]	202.0.0.2:500	201.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	The cookie pair is : 0x38db3478ae0c0ccc / 0x3895d3e24680ecf6 [count=4]	202.0.0.2:500	201.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[SA][VID][VID]	201.0.0.2:500	202.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send Main Mode request to [202.0.0.2]	201.0.0.2:500	202.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Tunnel [to_HQ] Sending IKE request	201.0.0.2:500	202.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	The cookie pair is : 0x38db3478ae0c0ccc / 0x0000000000000000 [count=2]	201.0.0.2:500	202.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	ISAKMP SA [to_HQ] is disconnected	201.0.0.2:500	200.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	The cookie pair is : 0xac22848ef26ab044 / 0x00000000000000000	201.0.0.2:500	200.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	IKE Packet Retransmit	201.0.0.2:500	200.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	The cookie pair is : 0xac22848ef26ab044 / 0x00000000000000000	201.0.0.2:500	200.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	IKE Packet Retransmit	201.0.0.2:500	200.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	The cookie pair is : 0xac22848ef26ab044 / 0x00000000000000000	201.0.0.2:500	200.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	IKE Packet Retransmit [count=4]	201.0.0.2:500	200.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG

All contents copyright (c) 2010 ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

On Br2, go to Monitor > VPN Monitor > IPSec VPN, you will find the two VPN tunnels are up. One is to Br1 (Policy 192.168.1.0/24<->192.168.4.0/24). The other is to HQ (Policy 192.168.4.0/24<->192.168.1.0/24).

IPSec								
Curren	t IPSec Secu	rity Associations						
Name								
Policy			Search					
8	Disconnect							
#	Name 🔺	Encapsulation	Policy	Algorithm	Up Time	Timeout	Inbound(Bytes)	Outbound(Bytes)
1	to_HQ	Tunnel	192.168.4.0/24⇔192.168.1.	DES/SHA1	80	86316	75(8400 bytes)	75(4500 bytes)
2	to_br1	Tunnel	192.168.1.0/24<>192.168.4.	DES/SHA1	86	86344	76(8512 bytes)	75(4500 bytes)
14	4 Page 1	of 1   > > Show 50	✓ items					Displaying 1 - 2 of 2

Check the IKE logs on Br2 in Monitor > Log, you can find the tunnel to Br1 and to HQ are both built up successfully.

info	IKE	Tunnel [to_HQ:to_HQ:0x717d1c0a] built successfully	10.0.0.2:500	10.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[HASH]	10.0.0.2:500	10.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	[SA]: [Initiator:10.0.0.2][Responder:10.0.0.1][Policy:192.168.4.0/24-192.168.1.0	10.0.0.1:500	10.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Recv:[HASH][SA][NONCE][ID][ID]	10.0.0.1:500	10.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[HASH][SA][NONCE][ID][ID]	10.0.0.2:500	10.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Start Phase 2: Quick Mode	10.0.0.2:500	10.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Phase 1 IKE SA process done	10.0.0.2:500	10.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Recv:[ID][HASH]	10.0.0.1:500	10.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[ID][HASH][NOTFY:INITIAL_CONTACT]	10.0.0.2:500	10.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Recv:[KE][NONCE]	10.0.0.1:500	10.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[KE][NONCE]	10.0.0.2:500	10.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	The cookie pair is : 0xf7833c21a0028dbd / 0xa390a70332adf13b [count=8]	10.0.0.2:500	10.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Recv:[SA][VID][VID]	10.0.0.1:500	10.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	The cookie pair is : 0xf7833c21a0028dbd / 0xa390a70332adf13b [count=4]	10.0.0.1:500	10.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[SA][VID][VID]	10.0.0.2:500	10.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send Main Mode request to [10.0.0.1]	10.0.0.2:500	10.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Tunnel [to_HQ] Sending IKE request	10.0.0.2:500	10.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	The cookie pair is : 0xf7833c21a0028dbd / 0x00000000000000000 [count=2]	10.0.0.2:500	10.0.0.1:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Tunnel [to_br1:0x51acfdd7] is disconnected	202.0.0.2:4500	201.0.0.2	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Tunnel [to_br1:to_br1:0x6c13f55c] built successfully	201.0.0.2:500	202.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	[SA]: [Responder:202.0.0.2][Initiator:201.0.0.2][Policy:192.168.1.0/24-192.168.	201.0.0.2:500	202.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Recv:[HASH]	201.0.0.2:500	202.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[HASH][SA][NONCE][ID][ID]	202.0.0.2:500	201.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Recv:[HASH][SA][NONCE][ID][ID]	201.0.0.2:500	202.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	ISAKMP SA [to_br1] is disconnected	202.0.0.2:500	201.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[HASH][DEL] [count=2]	202.0.0.2:500	201.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Tunnel [to_br1:0x51acfdd7] is disconnected	202.0.0.2:500	201.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	The cookie pair is : 0xa378d863f4d7bebf / 0xd3b7c9826e61517f [count=4]	202.0.0.2:500	201.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[ID][HASH]	202.0.0.2:500	201.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Phase 1 IKE SA process done	202.0.0.2:500	201.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Recv:[ID][HASH][NOTFY:INITIAL_CONTACT]	201.0.0.2:500	202.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[KE][NONCE]	202.0.0.2:500	201.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKF	Recv: IKEIINONCEI	201.0.0.2:500	202.0.0.2:500	IKE LOG

Plug back HQ USG WAN1, the tunnel from Br1 to HQ will fall back to the HQ WAN1.

Reply	from	192.168.1.33:	bytes=32	time=5ms	TTL=123
Reply	from	192.168.1.33:	bytes=32	time=5ms	TTL=123
Reply	from	192.168.1.33:	bytes=32	time=5ms	TTL=123
Reply	from	192.168.1.33:	bytes=32	time=5ms	TTL=123
Reply	from	192.168.1.33:	bytes=32	time=5ms	TTL=123
Reply	from	192.168.1.33:	bytes=32	time=5ms	TTL=123
Reply	from	192.168.1.33:	bytes=32	time=5ms	TTL=123
Reply	from	192.168.1.33:	bytes=32	time=5ms	TTL=123
Reply	from	192.168.1.33:	bytes=32	time=5ms	TTL=123
Reply	from	192.168.1.33:	bytes=32	time=5ms	TTL=123
Reply	from	192.168.1.33:	bytes=32	time=5ms	TTL=123
Reques	t tir	ned out.			
Reply	from	192.168.1.33:	bytes=32	time=5ms	TTL=125
Reply	from	192.168.1.33:	bytes=32	time=3ms	TTL=125
Reply	from	192.168.1.33:	bytes=32	time=3ms	TTL=125
Reply	from	192.168.1.33:	bytes=32	time=3ms	TTL=125
Reply	from	192.168.1.33:	bytes=32	time=3ms	TTL=125
Reply	from	192.168.1.33:	bytes=32	time=3ms	TTL=125
Reply	from	192.168.1.33:	bytes=32	time=3ms	TTL=125
Reply	from	192.168.1.33:	bytes=32	time=3ms	TTL=125
Reply	from	192.168.1.33:	bytes=32	time=3ms	TTL=125
Reply	from	192.168.1.33:	bytes=32	time=3ms	TTL=125

On Br1, go to Monitor > Log, you will find the tunnel fall back to HQ WAN1 (200.0.0.2) successfully.

info	IKE	ISAKMP SA [to_HQ] is disconnected	201.0.0.2:500	202.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Fall Back [to_HQ] to primary peer gateway successfully at the 1th time			IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Tunnel [to_HQ:to_HQ:0x552cf595:0xc480207e] rekeyed successfully	201.0.0.2:500	200.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Fall Back [to_HQ] is continue install SA.			IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Fall Back [to_HQ] send delete SA packet successfully			IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[HASH][DEL]	201.0.0.2:500	202.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	The cookie pair is : 0xa378d863f4d7bebf / 0xd3b7c9826e61517f [count=2]	201.0.0.2:500	202.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Fall Back [to_HQ] is suspended to send delete sa packet to secondary peer gateway			IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[HASH]	201.0.0.2:500	200.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	[SA]: [Initiator:201.0.0.2][Responder:200.0.0.2][Policy:192.168.4.0/24-192.168.1.0/24][ESP des-ct	200.0.0.2:500	201.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Recv:[HASH][SA][NONCE][ID][ID]	200.0.0.2:500	201.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[HASH][SA][NONCE][ID][ID]	201.0.0.2:500	200.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Start Phase 2: Quick Mode	201.0.0.2:500	200.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Phase 1 IKE SA process done	201.0.0.2:500	200.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Recv:[ID][HASH]	200.0.0.2:500	201.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[ID][HASH][NOTFY:INITIAL_CONTACT]	201.0.0.2:500	200.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Recv:[KE][NONCE]	200.0.0.2:500	201.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[KE][NONCE]	201.0.0.2:500	200.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	The cookie ps Send:[KE][NONCE] =775c / 0x025c896acd556fda [count=8]	201.0.0.2:500	200.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Recv:[SA][VID][VID]	200.0.0.2:500	201.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	The cookie pair is : 0x3cf8e7f2adae775c / 0x025c896acd556fda [count=4]	200.0.0.2:500	201.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send:[SA][VID][VID]	201.0.0.2:500	200.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Send Main Mode request to [200.0.0.2]	201.0.0.2:500	200.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Tunnel [to_HQ] Sending IKE request	201.0.0.2:500	200.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	The cookie pair is : 0x3cf8e7f2adae775c / 0x0000000000000000 [count=2]	201.0.0.2:500	200.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Tunnel [to_HQ:0xdd670c2e] is disconnected	201.0.0.2:4500	200.0.0.2	IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Fall Back [to_HQ] will start fall back after 60 seconds			IKE_LOG
info	IKE	Tunnel [to_HQ:to_HQ:0x552cf595] built successfully	201.0.0.2:500	202.0.0.2:500	IKE_LOG

# FAQ

The FAQ from A to P are ZLD v2.12 related. But you can also refer to them for ZLD v2.20 corresponding questions.

# A. Device Management FAQ

## A01. How can I connect to ZyWALL USG to perform

### administrator's tasks?

You can connect your PC to ZyWALL USG port 1 interface with Ethernet cable, which is most left Ethernet port. You will get the IP address automatically from DHCP by default. Connect to <u>http://192.168.1.1</u> using web browser to login ZyWALL USG for management. The default administration username is "**admin**", and password is "**1234**".

## A02. Why can't I login into ZyWALL USG?

There may have several reasons why you can't login to ZyWALL USG:

- 1. The ZyWALL USG supports the following types of browsers. Check if you are not using other type of browser.
  - IE 6.0 or above
  - Firefox 1.5.0 or above
  - Netscape 7.2 or above
- 2. To login ZyWALL USG's GUI, it's mandatory to enable JavaScript and accept cookies in your web browser. Check if you don't have them disabled in the web browser. If you do, enable them.
- 3. To login ZyWALL USG's GUI, a popup window function in web browser is used. Check if you have the popup windows block enabled in the web browser. If so, please disable the block in the web browser.
- 4. You may be entering wrong username or password.
- 5. You might have typed a wrong password for over 5 times. ZyWALL USG blocks login from such an IP address for 30 minutes by default.
- 6. You can be connecting to ZyWALL USG from a WAN interface which is blocked by default. If you don't want this block rule, go to GUI menu System > WWW to set to accept the access from 'WAN' or from 'All'.
  Then switch to menu Eirewall > To ZyWALL rules to add the HTTP access

Then switch to menu Firewall > **To-ZyWALL rules** to add the HTTP access from WAN side.

HTTPS				
🗹 Enable	×			
Server P	Port	443		
🗌 Auth	enticate Client Certificates	(See <u>Trusted CAs</u> )		
Server C	Certificate	default 💌		
🗹 Redir	rect HTTP to HTTPS			
Admin Service	e Control			
#	Zone	Address	Action	Ē
1	ALL	ALL	Accept	<b>B</b> 🔁 🛍 DN
User Service	Control			
#	Zone	Address	Action	đ
1	ALL	ALL	Accept	IS 型 亩 №
HTTP				
Enable				
Server P	Port	80		
Adaptic Constan	e Control	20 S		
Admin Service				5
#	Zone	Address	Action	±.

*Note:* By default, Firewall blocks all the access except the traffic like VRRP, IPSec ESP, IPSec AH, IPSec NATT, IPSec IKE.

A A COLORE	Firewall										
Global	Setting										
EI	nable Fire ] Allow A laximum :	wall symmetrical Ro session per Hos	oute it		(1-8192)						
Firewa	ill rule										
From Z	one	any 🗸	1	To Zone any	V		Refresh				
Total ru	iles:27			2	30 🗸	entries per page		3	Page: 📧	1	of 1 💽
#	Priority	/ From	То	Schedule	User	Source	Destination	Service	Access	5 Log	Ť
1	1	LAN1	WAN	none	any	any	any	any	allow	no	💡 💕 🖳 🛍
2											
<b>1</b>	2	LAN1	DMZ	none	any	any	any	any	allow	no	9 🗗 🔁 🗇
3	2	LAN1 WAN	DMZ LAN1	none none	any any	any any	any any	any any	allow deny	no log	<b>₽</b> ₿°₽₫ <b>₽</b> ₿°₽₫
3	2 3 4	UAN1 WAN WAN	DMZ LAN1 DMZ	none none none	any any any	any any any	any any any	any any any	allow deny allow	no log no	\$540 \$540
3 4 5	2 3 4 5	LAN1 WAN WAN DMZ	DMZ LAN1 DMZ LAN1	none none none none	any any any any	any any any any	any any any any any	any any any any	allow deny allow deny	no log no log	\$5°\$0 \$5°\$0 \$5°\$0
3 4 5 6	2 3 4 5 6	LAN1 WAN DMZ DMZ	DMZ LAN1 DMZ LAN1 WAN	none none none none none	any any any any any	any any any any any any	any any any any any	any any any any any any	allow deny allow deny allow	no log no log no	\$\$\$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$
3 4 5 6	2 3 4 5 6	LAN1 WAN DMZ DMZ	DMZ LAN1 DMZ LAN1 WAN ZyWALL	none none none none none none	any any any any any -an <u>y</u>	any any any any any any	any any any any any any	any any any any any any	allow deny allow deny allow	no log no log no	\$\$,\$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$
3 4 5 6 -7 - 8	2 3 4 5 6 	LAN1 WAN DMZ DMZ LAN1	DMZ LAN1 DMZ LAN1 WAN ZyWALL –	none none none none none <u>none</u>	any any any any any -any	any any any any any any any any	any any any any any any any any	any any any any any any VRRP	allow deny allow deny allow allow	no log no no no no	***
3 4 5 6 7 - 7 - 8 9	2 3 4 5 6 2 8 9	LAN1 WAN DMZ DMZ LAN1	DMZ LAN1 DMZ LAN1 WAN ZyWALL ZyWALL ZyWALL	none none none none none none none none	any any any any any any any any any	any any any any any any any any any	any any any any any - any any any any	any any any any any any vRRP ESP	allow deny allow deny allow allow allow	no log log no no no no	\$\$,50 \$\$,50 \$\$,50 \$\$,50 \$\$,50 \$\$,50 \$\$,50 \$\$,50 \$\$,50
3 4 5 6 -7 -7 9 10	2 3 4 5 6 Z _ 8 9 10	LAN1 WAN DMZ DMZ LAN1 WAN WAN WAN	DMZ LAN1 DMZ LAN1 WAN - ZyWALL ZyWALL ZyWALL ZyWALL	none none none none none none none none	any any any any any any any any any	any any any any any 	any any any any any any any any	any any any any any any VRRP ESP AH	allow deny allow allow allow allow allow	no log no log no no no no	\$\$\$\$ \$\$ \$\$ \$\$ \$\$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$

# A03. What's difference between "Admin Service Control" and "User Service Control" configuration in GUI menu System > WWW?

The "Admin Service Control" configuration is for controlling user login with admin user-type to perform management task including **Admin** and **Limited-Admin**. And "User Service Control" configuration table is for controlling user login with access user-type to perform user access task including **User** and **Guest**.

## A04. Why ZyWALL USG redirects me to the login page when I

#### am performing the management tasks in GUI?

There may be several reasons for ZyWALL USG to redirect you to login page when you are doing configuration.

- 1. Admin user's re-auth time (force re-login time) has reached. The default time value is 24hours.
- 2. Admin user's lease time has been reached. The default time value is 24hours.
- 3. You are trying to login ZyWALL USG using other remote management client (telnet or ssh...etc) after you logged in ZyWALL USG using a web browser.

4. PC's IP address has changed after your previous login. The re-login is required then.

### A05. Why do I lose my configuration setting after ZyWALL USG

#### restarts?

There may have two reasons:

- 1. If you configure ZyWALL USG from CLI. You must type CLI "**write**" to save the configuration before rebooting. If you configure ZyWALL USG from GUI, any configuration will be automatically saved.
- ZyWALL USG might fail to apply the configuration using the startup-config.conf when booting up. It might because the startup-config.conf is corrupted. If so, ZyWALL USG will try to use the last boot up configuration file (lastgood.conf), which can boot up successfully. Your settings will revert to the last boot up configuration.

### A06. How can I do if the system is keeping at booting up stage

### for a long time?

There are two reasons if your ZyWALL USG boots up for a long time as below. 1. It might because you have many configurations on ZyWALL USG. For example, you configured over 500 VPN settings. Please connect to console and you can see which process the system is processing at.

Note: If the system is processing ok, admin can connect to ZyWALL USG's lan1 port which is with IP address 192.168.1.1 by default.

2. The ZyWALL USG may get firmware crashed. Generally, it may happen if power off ZyWALL USG when it's during firmware upgrading. For this case, admin could connect to console and see the message as shown below (ensure your terminal baud rate is configured correctly).

If you do see the message, please start the firmware recovery procedure as following steps.

1. Connect a PC with ZyWALL USG's lan1 port via an Ethernet cable.

2. <u>ftp 192.168.1.1</u> from your FTP client or MS-DOS mode

3. Set the transfer mode to binary (use "bin" in the Windows command prompt).

4. Reload the firmware. (ex. use command "put 1.00(XL.1)C0.bin" to upload firmware file)

5. Wait the FTP uploading completed and it will restart the ZyWALL USG automatically.

# **B. Registration FAQ**

#### B01. Why do I need to do the Device Registration?

You must first register ZyWALL USG device with myZyXEL.com server, before you activate and use IDP and Content filter external rating service.

## B02. Why do I need to activate services?

It's mandatory to activate these security services before you enable and use these services. For IDP and the content filter, you need to activate services first before you can update the latest signatures from myZyXEL.com update server.

## B03. Why can't I active trial service?

You must make sure that your device can connect to internet first. Then register ZyWALL USG device with myZyXEL.com server through GUI menu Registration page.

### **B04. Will the UTM service registration information be reset**

#### once restore configuration in ZyWALL USG back to

#### manufactory default?

Yes. Both the device configuration and UTM service registration, e.g. AV/IDP/CF, will be erased once the user reset the device configuration back to manufactory default. However, the service subscription information can be recovered by following the procedures as:

1. Next time device synchronization with myZyXEL.com.

2. User click "Service License Refresh" button from ZyWALL > Licensing > Registration > Service page.

## C. File Manager FAQ

#### C01. How can ZyWALL USG manage multiple configuration

#### files?

From ZyWALL USG GUI menu File Manager > Configuration File, it allows admin to save multiple configuration files. Besides, Admin could "manipulate" files, such as to upload, delete, copy, rename, download the files, and apply a certain file to hot-switching the configuration without hardware reboot.

#### C02. What are the configuration files like startup-config.conf,

#### system-default.conf and lastgood.conf?

- 1. **startup-config.conf**: The startup-config.conf is ZyWALL USG system configuration file. When ZyWALL USG is booting, it will use this configuration file for ZyWALL USG as system configuration.
- 2. **system-default.conf**: The system-default.conf is ZyWALL USG system default configuration file. When you press the reset button, ZyWALL USG will copy system-default.conf over startup-conf.conf.
- lastgood.conf: The lastgood.conf is created after ZyWALL USG successfully applies startup-config.conf. And ZyWALL USG will try to apply lastconfig.conf, if ZyWALL USG fail to apply startup-config.conf. You can check the GUI menu Maintenance > Log to check the configuration applied status after booting.

Please note the configuration file downloaded through web GUI is text-based which is readable and is very useful for administrator to have a quick overview for the detailed configuration.

### C03. Why can't I update firmware?

It's mandatory to have at least 70MB free memory before upgrade firmware. If you still can't get enough memory to upgrade firmware, you can perform upgrade after system reboot which frees up the memory.

## C04. What is the Shell Scripts for in GUI menu File manager >

#### **Shell Scripts?**

Shell scripts are files of commands that you can store on the ZyWALL and run when you need them. When you run a shell script, the ZyWALL only applies the commands that it contains. Other settings do not change.

#### C05. How to write a shell script?

You can edit shell scripts in a text editor and upload them to the ZyWALL USG through GUI menu **File manager** > **Shell Script** tab. Some notes as followings.

- Must follow ZyWALL USG CLI syntax
- Must add "configure terminal" at the beginning of the script file.
- Must save as a ".zysh" file extension.

An example is shown below.

# enter configuration mode
configure terminal
# change administrator password
username admin password 4321 user-type admin
# add a user 'anne' and set both the lease and re-auth time to 1440 sec.
username anne user-type ext-user
username anne description External User
username anne logon-lease-time 1440
username anne logon-re-auth-time 1440
exit
write

### C06. Why can't I run shell script successfully?

Please ensure that you follow the correct CLI command syntax to write this script. And make sure that you add the "**configure terminal**" in the top line of this script file.

## **D. Object FAQ**

#### D01. Why does ZyWALL USG use object?

ZyWALL USG object include address, service, schedule, authentication method, certificate, zone, interface group and ISP account object. The ZyWALL USG uses object as a basic configuration block. It can simplify the configuration change once your have some change in the network topology.

For example, User can first create a zone object WAN_ZONE with the WAN1 interface and later add the wan2 interface into WAN_ZONE. All security features that use the WAN_ZONE will change their configuration immediately according to zone object WAN_ZONE change.

We also provide a feature call "in-line object create", this feature can let you create an object without leaving the original page, for example, during the time creating an Access Policy for SSL VPN, you can simply click the "Add" button, it will pop-up a new windows and link to "User Configuration" page, therefore you don't have to leave the page you are configuring access policy.

Configuration				
🔽 Enable				
Name	5	SSLaccess		
Description	٩ ٩	New create		(Optional)
User/Group (Optional)	https://192.168.1.1 - prusered	it.html - M	icrosoft Interne	t Explorer
Available				
admin Idap-users radius-users	User Configuration			
ad-users	User Name		sharno	
	user Type		User	1
Add	Password			
SSL Application List (Or	Retype			
oor appared on cor (of	Description		Local User	
Available	Lease Time		1440 unlimited)	(0-1440 mi
	Reauthentication Time		1440	(0-1440 mi
			anninceay	

#### D02. What's the difference between Trunk and the Zone

#### **Object?**

The trunk concept is used as an interface group for a policy routing. You can add interfaces and define load balance mechanisms in one trunk.

The zone concept is used to group multiple of interfaces, which have the same security policy. For example, you can define two zones, LAN and WAN, and add a firewall rule to control the traffic between LAN and WAN.

#### D03. What is the difference between the default LDAP and the

#### group LDAP? What is the difference between the default

#### **RADIUS and the group RADIUS?**

Default LDAP/RADIUS server is a built-in AAA object. If you only have one LDAP/RADIUS server installed, all you need to do is to setup the default LDAP/RADIUS and then select group ldap/radius into authentication method. If you have several redundant LDAP/RADIUS servers, you may need to create your own LDAP/RADIUS server groups. But don't forget selecting the LDAP/RADIUS server groups in the authentication method chosen for authenticating.

## E. Interface FAQ

#### E01. How to setup the WAN interface with PPPoE or PPTP?

First, you need to create an ISP account, which has protocol type of PPPoE or PPTP. Then you need to create PPP interface on GUI menu **Interface** > **PPPOE/PPTP**. You can name this PPP interface, for example 'ppp0' (you can have ppp0~ppp11 ppp interface, ppp12 is reserved to modem dialup interface). After that, you need to create a policy route, which has next-hop interface set to ppp0.

### E02. How to add a virtual interface (IP alias)?

To add a virtual interface, go to GUI menu **Interface** > **Ethernet**, click the "+" icon on each interface row. For example, I want to add a virtual interface of lan1. click the "+" icon from the interface lan1 row, and fill out the necessary fields. It will create the virtual interface, lan1:1.

### E03. Why can't I get IP address via DHCP relay?

It requires special support from a DHCP server. Some DHCP servers would check special fields in a DHCP discover/request and it is possible for the servers to not to respond them. So make sure your DHCP server supports DHCP relay.

### E04. Why can't I get DNS options from ZyWALL's DHCP

#### server?

There could be several reasons. If you configure a static IP on a WAN interface, you should have custom defined DNS servers in the LAN interface or there would be no way to get DNS servers from ISP. If the interface that provides the DNS server goes down, the DNS server would be regarded as dead one and won't pass it to the LAN PCs. So make sure all the interfaces that provide DNS server don't go down because of link down, ping-check or becoming disabled.

#### E05. Why does the PPP interface dials successfully even its

#### base interface goes down?


The base interface is just a reference which ZyWALL uses to connect to PPP server. If you have another active interface/routes, ZyWALL will try to maintain connectivity.

# **Routing and NAT FAQ**

#### F01. How to add a policy route?

From the GUI menu **Policy** >**Route**, click the "+" icon in the table and define matching Criteria for this route. Then select a next-hop type. If you want to use Link HA and Load Balance, "Trunk" should be selected as a next-hop type. If you want to route traffic into an IPsec tunnel, you need to select "VPN tunnel". Please note that the policy routes will be matched in order. If the first route matches the criteria, ZyWALL USG will use the route setting to direct the traffic to the next hop.

#### F02. How to configure local loopback in ZyWALL USG?

Local loopback is a feature used in the following scenario.

For a general application the users access to the web service by entering the FQDN (Full Qualify Domain Name, e.g. <u>http://www.zyxel.com</u>) other than an IP address. This is because the domain name is easier to remember. However, when both the Server and Client are located behind the same NAT, a triangle route problem will encounter. See the example as illustrated below to understand the network topology: (Here a Web server is used as an example.)



1. The internal user enter the URL and the DNS client in the computer queries the domain name "xxx.USG2000.com" from the public DNS server and retrieves the Web

server's 1-1 NAT mapping public IP address- 192.168.35.100.

2. From the Virtual Server setting, ZyWALL USG forwards it to the internal IP 192.168.105.37.

3. The Web server receives a request from the same subnet and replies it directly to PC through L2 switch dispatching. This is known as "triangle route".

Please follow these steps to configure the ZyWALL USG in order to solve the triangle route problem:

#### **1-1 NAT mapping Configuration:**

Firstly create two address object: WEB_WAN as 192.168.35.100 and WEB_LAN as 192.168.105.37. After that, create the Virtual Server rule of incoming DNAT translation to allow the server connect to outside network.



Create one Policy Route rule for outgoing SNAT to translate the private IP to public one.

After these two steps, the 1-1 NAT mapping on ZyWALL USG is complete.



Enable	
Description	(Optional)
riteria	
User	any
Incomina	Interface / any Change
Source Address	WEB-LAN 💌
Destination Address	any 💌
Schedule	none 💌
Service	any New
lext-Hop	
Туре	Trunk
Gateway	ZW_WAN_IP 💌
Interface	ge1 💌
VPN Tunnel	Remote-Dialup
Trunk	WAN_TRUNK 🔽
Address Translation	

#### **NAT loopback Configuration**

In order to run the NAT loopback on ZyWALL USG, please add these rules after you finish the 1-1 NAT mapping.

Firstly, add one Virtual Server rule for LAN usage. All the parameters are the same as those set on 1-1 NAT mapping, except the Interface item.

ame	Configure this rule
	for LAN usage
Apped IP	192 168 105 37
	Port
Protocol Type	Any V
Driginal Port	80
apped Port	80
Discourse the Group II allows	

In total there are two Virtual Server rules in this case.

If you put the Web Server on DMZ and access from the LAN, this configuration will do as you requested. However, if you put the Web Server on LAN and access from the LAN, you need another Policy Route rule to realize it.



Virtua	Server								
т	Total Virtual Se	rvers: 2	30	<ul> <li>entries per page</li> </ul>			Page 1/1		
	#	Name	Interface	Original IP	Mapped IP	Protocol	Original Port	Mapped Port	Ð
	1	NAT-WEB	ge2	WEB-WAN	192.168.105.37	any	80	80	🖗 💕 🛍
	2	NAT-WEB-IN	ge1	WEB-WAN	192.168.105.37	any	80	80	🕸 🗗 🗑

This Policy Route rule makes all the internal access must do the SNAT translation. This will force all the traffic to go back to the ZyWALL USG and avoid the triangle route problem.

Configuration				
Enable				
Description			(Optional)	
Criteria				
User		any 🔻		
Incoming		Interface / ge1 Change		
Source Address		LAN_SUBNET -		
Destination Address		WEB-LAN		
Schedule		none 💌		
Service		any • New		
Next-Hop				
Туре		Interface •		
Gateway		ZW WAN IP -		
Interface		ge1 💌		
VPN Tunnel		Remote-Dialup 💌		
Trunk		WAN_TRUNK		
Address Translation				
Source Network Address	s Translation	outgoing-interface 💌		
Port Triggering				

Certainly, the related configuration like the Firewall ACL check must be set.

After the configuration is done, the LAN users are able to access the LAN server by typing FQDN.

#### F03. How to configure a NAT?

Unlike ZyNOS ZyWALL, the NAT setting in ZyWALL USG is in Policy Route and port forwarding setting is Virtual Server as the configuration page is shown below.

- Configure NAT setting in **Configuration** > **Policy** > **Route**
- Configure port forwarding setting in **Configuration** > **Virtual Server**

In the policy route setting, there is the source network address translation (SNAT) setting is at Address Translation area. Choose 'none' means to turn off the NAT feature for the policy route rule accordingly. To choose "outgoing-interface" or other



address object you defined, it means turn on the NAT feature and it will refer to the next-hop setting to execute routing.

For the specific traffic needs to be re-directed to a certain internal server, the virtual server needs to be configured. This feature allows ports/host mapping from a WAN interface IP to an internal DMZ/LAN IP. For example, if you want to forward HTTP traffic with 8080 port to the ZyWALL5 in ZyWALL USG's DMZ zone, you need to configure virtual server to forward <Original IP(ex. WAN1's IP):8080> to <Internal server IP:8080>.

#### F04. After I installed a HTTP proxy server and set a http

#### redirect rule, I still can't access web. Why?

Your proxy server must support a transparent proxy. If your proxy does have this feature, turn it on. For example, for Squid, you have to have the option httpd_accel_uses_host_header enabled.

#### F05. How to limit some application (for example, FTP)

#### bandwidth usage?

In order to restrict the bandwidth usage for a specific application, you need to employ AppPatrol feature.

The following steps allow the user to limit the bandwidth usage from of FTP application:

1. Pick up the FTP application that you want to restrict bandwidth usage and click "Edit" in AppPatrol > Common page.

2. Click the "Edit" button for default policy, and the "Configuration" page appears.

3. On the "Configuration" page, enter the bandwidth amount you want to limit bandwidth usage in direction "Inbound" or "Outbound".

4. Back to "General" page under AppPatrol and check the "Enable BWM" checkbox then click the "Apply" button to complete the entire configuration.

Note. On the ZLD 1.0 the default setting of bandwidth management is ON and you cannot change the setting, but on the ZLD 2.0 the default setting of bandwidth management is off, therefore if you are upgraded from 1.0 to 2.0, the "Enable BWM" checkbox will be checked.

#### F06. What's the routing order of policy route, dynamic route,

#### and static route and direct connect subnet table?

All these routing information create the ZyWALL USG routing database. When routing, ZyWALL USG will search with the following order:

- 1. Local and direct connect subnet table.
- 2. Policy route rule.
- 3. Main table, which includes routes learned from RIP/OSPF, static routes and default routes.

#### F07. Why ZyWALL USG cannot ping the Internet host, but PC

#### from LAN side can browse internet WWW?

This is mainly caused by your interface configuration. If you setup two WAN interfaces, which have gateway IP address configured, the default route will have two entries added in ZyWALL USG. If one of the WAN interfaces can't connect to the internet (for example, ppp interface don't dialup successfully), and this interface has smaller metric than the other WAN interface, ZyWALL USG will select this as default route and traffic can't go out from the ZyWALL USG.

#### F08. Why can't I ping to the, Internet, after I shutdown the

#### primary WAN interface?

ZyWALL USG routes packets by checking session information first. Once packet matched a session that is already created, it would not lookup the routing table. So the interface status change doesn't affect the routing result until a new session is created. If you continually ping internet host and shutdown the ZyWALL USG primary WAN interface, the ping packet still matches the original session, which is bound to primary WAN interface already. The session timeout for ICMP is 15 second.

#### F09. Why the virtual server or port trigger does not work?

If virtual server or port trigger (or any traffic from WAN zone to LAN zone) doesn't

work, check whether the firewall rule from WAN to LAN is disabled.

#### F10. Why port trigger does not work?

The port trigger will work only when there is a connection matching that policy route rule. Please note that firewall may block those triggered services. So, if you have problems with triggering the service, check firewall settings and its logs too.

#### F11. How do I use the traffic redirect feature in ZyWALL USG?

If you have a router located in LAN, you could regard the router as a gateway and fill its address in a gateway field of the LAN interface which connects to the LAN router. Then, configure the interface as a passive member of the trunk which you use in the policy routing. In case all main links in the trunk go down, passive link (i.e. the LAN router) would be activated to maintain the connectivity.

Note: While you configure the gateway address in the interface, please also choose a suitable metric for the gateway or it would interfere with main links.

#### F12. Why can't ZyWALL learn the route from RIP and/or OSPF?

ZyWALL blocks RIP/OSPF routing advertisement from WAN/DMZ by default. If you find that it fails to learn the routes, check your firewall to-ZyWALL rules.

# G. VPN and Certificate

#### G01. Why can't the VPN connections dial to a remote gateway?

Please check the responder's logs whether the fail occurs in phase 1 or phase 2. If the phase 1 has failed, try to check the VPN gateway configuration, such as proposals or Local/Remote ID. If the phase 2 has failed, try to check the VPN connection configuration, such as whether the policy matches the one of the remote gateway.

#### G02. VPN connections are dialed successfully, but the traffic

#### still cannot go through the IPsec tunnel.

Check if there is a policy route that directs the traffic into the VPN connection. After the policy route is set, if the traffic still goes through another route path, check the order of policy routes.

#### G03. Why ZyWALL USG VPN tunnel had been configured

#### correctly and the VPN connection status is connected but the

#### traffic still can not reach the remote VPN subnet?

ZyWALL USG VPN traffic is the route base VPN, this means we need to configure a policy route rule to guide the ZyWALL USG how to route the VPN traffic to the VPN remote subnet. We can check if our VPN parameter setting is working by clicking connect icon after VPN tunnel has configured in both gateway. The VPN connection status showed below is connected.

Total Connection	1	30 💌 co	innection per page	Page	1/1	4.
Nome	VPN Gateway	Encapsulation	Algorithm	Policy		œ
1 zw70tunnel	zw70	TUNNEL	DES/SHA wholer	ange/VPN_LAN_SUBN	ET 🖗 🛛	5 8 👁

We need a policy route to notify the ZyWALL USG send the packet to VPN tunnel when the packet's destination address is VPN remote subnet. Please switch to



ZyWALL USG GUI > Configuration > Policy > Route > Policy Route and check if there is a rule that direct the traffic to VPN tunnel. The VPN tunnel candidates must be preconfigured in VPN connection menu.

e Use	c Schedule	Incoming	Source	Destination	Servic	e Next-Hop	SNAT	BWM	
1 an	none	any	any	VPN_LAN_SUBNET	any	zw70tunnel	none	0	98°881
2 an	none	gel	LAN_SUBNET	any	any	ge3	outgoing- interface	0	<b>**</b> *
3 an	none	zw70tunnel	VPN_LAN_SUBNET	any	any	ge3	outgoing- interface	0	95°8 2 H
					X	Send tra	affic to	VP	Ntunn

The traffic from local subnet can send to VPN remote subnet and get reply successfully after configured VPN tunnel and policy route.

# G04. VPN connections are dialed successfully, and the policy

#### route is set. But the traffic is lost or there is no response from

#### remote site.

There are two possibilities. One is that the traffic is blocked by firewall, Anti-Virus, Anti-Spam, IDP...etc. Please check the configuration of these services or search the related dropped logs. Another option is that the remote gateway doesn't know how to route the replied traffic. Please check the route rules of the remote gateway.

#### G05. Why don't the Inbound/Outbound traffic NAT in VPN

#### work?

Check the modified traffic for whether the outbound traffic SNAT still matches the VPN connection policy. If the traffic doesn't match the policy and the policy enforcement is active, it will be dropped by the VPN. For Inbound traffic SNAT/DNAT, check if there is a directly connected subnet or a route rule to the destination.

# H. Firewall FAQ

#### H01. Why doesn't my LAN to WAN or WAN to LAN rule work?

There may be some reasons why firewall doesn't correctly constrain the access.

- 1. The WAN zone doesn't include all WAN interfaces. For example, if you create a PPPoE interface, you need to add this ppp interface into the WAN zone.
- 2. The firewall rules order is not correct. Since firewall search firewall rules in order, it will apply the first firewall rule that matches criteria.

#### H02. Why does the intra-zone blocking malfunction after I

#### disable the firewall?

Intra-zone blocking is also a firewall feature. If you want to have intra-zone blocking working, please keep the firewall enabled.

#### H03. Can I have access control rules to the device in firewall?

If your ZYWALL USG image is older than b6, the answer is No. Firewall only affects the forwarded traffic. You need to set the access control rules in system for each service such as DNS, ICMP, WWW, SSH, TELNET, FTP and SNMP. After b6 image, user can configure to-ZyWALL rules to manage traffic that is destined to ZyWALL.

# I. Application Patrol FAQ

#### **I01. What is Application Patrol?**

Application Patrol is to inspect and determine the application type accurately by looking at the application payload, OSI layer 7, regardless of the port numbers.

#### **I02.** What applications can the Application Patrol function

#### inspect?

AppPatrol on ZyWALL USG supports four categories of application protocols at the time of writing.

- 1. General protocols -- HTTP, FTP, SMTP, POP3 and IRC.
- 2. IM category -- MSN, Yahoo Messenger, AOL-ICQ, QQ
- 3. P2P category -- BT, eDonkey, Fasttrack, Gnutella, Napster, H.323, SIP, Soulseek
- 4. Streaming Protocols -- RTSP (Real Time Streaming Protocol)

<i>Note:</i> T	he applications	support is not	configurable	(add or remove).
----------------	-----------------	----------------	--------------	------------------

Protocol Type	Protocol	Application Type/Version	Action Block	Block of Access	BWM over the Application
Common	FTP	Filezilla 2.2.18, 2.2.19 (Active)	Protocol detect	Yes	Yes
Common	FTP	Filezilla 2.2.18, 2.2.19 (Passive)	Protocol detect	Yes	Yes
Common	HTTP	IE 6	Protocol detect	Yes	Yes
Common	HTTP	Firefox 2.0, 1.5	Protocol detect	Yes	Yes
Common	IRC		Protocol detect	Yes	Yes
Common	POP3	Outlook Express 6	Protocol detect	Yes	Yes
Common	SMTP	Outlook Express 6	Protocol detect	Yes	Yes
IM	aol-icq	ICQ 5.1	audio	Yes	No
IM	aol-icq	ICQ 5.1	video	Yes	No
IM	aol-icq	ICQ 5.1	file transfer	Yes	No
IM	aol-icq	ICQ 5.1	Login	Yes	No
IM	aol-icq	ICQ 5.1	Message	Yes	No
IM	jabber	Google Talk 1.0	Login	Yes	No
IM	msn	7.5, 8.0	audio	Yes	Yes
IM	msn	7.5, 8.0	file transfer	Yes	Yes
IM	msn	7.5, 8.0	Login	Yes	No
IM	msn	7.5, 8.0	Message	Yes	No
IM	msn	7.5, 8.0	video	Yes	Yes

#### **ZyWALL USG Support Notes**

IM	qq	QQ2006, QQ2007Beta	Login	Yes	No
IM	Web-MSN	NA (Web Application)	Login	Yes	No
IM	Yahoo	8.1.0.195	audio	Yes	Yes
IM	Yahoo	8.1.0.195	file transfer	Yes	Yes
IM	Yahoo	8.1.0.195	Login	Yes	No
IM	Yahoo	8.1.0.195	Message	Yes	No
IM	Yahoo	8.1.0.195	video	Yes	Yes
P2P	bittorrent	Bitcommet 0.79	Protocol detect	Yes	Yes
P2P	eDonkey	emule 0.47c; Vagaa	Protocol detect	Yes	No
P2P	ezpeer	EzPeer Plus 1.0	Login	Yes	No
P2P	fasttrack	Kazaa 3.2	Login	Yes	No
P2P	Gnutella	LimeWire 4.12, Foxy 1.9	Protocol detect	Yes	Yes
P2P	kad	emule 0.47c; Vagaa	Protocol detect	Yes*	No
P2P	kuro	KuroBang	Login	Yes	No
P2P	росо	Poco 2006	Protocol detect	Yes	No
P2P	pplive	PPLive 1.7.26	Protocol detect	Yes	Yes
P2P	qqlive	QQLive 3.5	Protocol detect	Yes	Yes
IM	rediff	Rediff 8.0	Login	Yes	No
IM	rediff	Rediff 8.0	Message	Yes	No
IM	rediff	Rediff 8.0	audio	Yes	No
IM	rediff	Rediff 8.0	video	Yes	No
IM	rediff	Rediff 8.0	file transfer	Yes	No
P2P	soulseek	Soulseek 156/157test8	Protocol detect	Yes	No
P2P	thunder	Thunder 5.5	Protocol detect	Yes	Yes
Streaming	Rtsp	RealMedia Player v6.0	Protocol detect	Yes	No
VoIP	H323	Netmeeting 3.01	Protocol detect	Yes	Yes
VoIP	SIP	Windows Messenger 5.1	Protocol detect	Yes	Yes
VolP	SIP	Gizmo 3.0	Protocol detect	Yes	Yes

#### 103. Why does the application patrol fail to drop/reject invalid

#### access for some applications?

There are two possible reasons for this problem. One is that this application version is not supported by the Application Patrol (please refer to Application Patrol Support List). The other is that the Application Patrol needs several session packets for the application identification. After the session is identified successfully (or it can't be identified), specified action is taken. If the session is terminated before being identified, application patrol won't take any action. But it seldom happens.

#### **I04.** What is the difference between "Auto" and "Service Ports"

#### settings in the Application Patrol configuration page?

If the user selects "Auto", the ZyWALL inspects packet by OSL layer 7(signature pattern). By selecting "Service Ports", the ZyWALL inspects the incoming packet based on layer 4. By default, "Auto" will be selected once an AppPatrol rule is enabled. Please refer to the following information in advance to use "Service Ports" option:

(1) Defines the port used in ZyWALL USG. For easy configuration purpose, the ZyWLL has been pre-configured for the frequent use service port. For example: eDonkey service is pre-defined to take action on port 4661 ~ 4665 as shown below.

5010100							
🗹 Enable Ser	vice						
Service Iden	tification						
Name			eDonkey	110			
Classification			O Auto	Service Po	rts		
Service Port				Service Po	t đ	7	
				4661	1	1	
				4662	1	d .	
				4663	Ī		
				4664	ច	đ	
				4665	Ĩ		
Policy					1		
# Por	t Schedule	liser	Erom	То	Source	Destination	Acces
Default 0	none	any	any	any	any	any	forward
					K Canc	el	

(2) It could be used when user want to apply bandwidth control for certain allowed or rejected application (which is in Application Patrol support list).

(3) Since the "Service Port" performs up to OSI layer 4 inspections, so the system performance would be better than the "Auto" inspection (layer 7). Therefore, if the user concerns about system performance or user's network environment is simple, the

"Service Ports" setting could be the choice.

#### **I05.** What is the difference between BWM (bandwidth

#### management) in Policy Route and App. Patrol?

There are two places to set BWM policies:

1. Policy Route – The rule of Policy Route supports Outbound BWM only.

2. App. Patrol – App. Patrol supports both Outbound BWM and Inbound BWM.

If a traffic matches the BWM rules of both Policy Route and App. Patrol, Policy route will be applied on the traffic.

#### 106. Do I have to purchase iCards specifically for using

#### **AppPatrol feature?**

AppPatrol can be free for usage.

Pre-Condition & Usage:

AppPatrol packet inspection mechanism relays on signature pattern if you select "auto" mode, which is also employed by IDP feature. You can have the signature download from subscribing IDP/AppPatrol trial service. During the trial period, you can download the signature. After trial program expired, you will no longer able to update the signature unless you subscribe the IDP UTM service (Note: Purchase of IDP iCard is required). However, you still can use AppPatrol feature without signature update. (Remark: New application may not be detected if signature is not updated.)

#### 107. Can I configure different access level based on application

#### for different users?

Yes, you can configure different access level for different users, for example, you can configure the RD team have the rights to using MSN but only have rights to chat, they cannot transfer files. The managers will have full access rights, but the Guests have no rights to using MSN even login.

#### **108.** Can I migrate AppPatrol policy and bandwidth

#### management control from ZLD1.0x to ZLD2.0x?

No, as the new ZLD platform 2.0x enhances zone-to-zone mechanism which is not capable to migrate into new AppPatrol. Therefore, the user will be required to reconfigure the related setting after complete firmware upgrade.

# J. IDP FAQ

#### J01. Why doesn't the IDP work? Why has the signature

#### updating failed?

Please check if your IDP services are activated and are not expired.

#### J02. When I use a web browser to configure the IDP,

#### sometimes it will popup "wait data timeout".

For current release, when you configure IDP and enable all the IDP rules at the same time, you may see the GUI showing "wait data timeout". This is because GUI can't get the IDP module setting result for a period of time, even if the configuration of ZyWALL USG is correct.

#### J03. When I want to configure the packet inspection

#### (signatures), the GUI becomes very slow.

We suggest you had better use "Base Profile" to turn on/off signatures.

#### J04. After I select "Auto Update" for IDP, when will it update the

#### signatures?

After applying "Auto Update", ZyWALL USG will update signatures Hourly, Daily, or Weekly. But updating will occur at random minute within the hour specified by user.

# J05. If I want to use IDP service, will it is enough if I just

#### complete the registration and turn on IDP?

Please ensure to activate the "protected zone" you would like to protect and configure the action for attack of the "protected zone" in the related IDP profile is others than



"none".

# J06. What are the major design differences in IDP in ZLD1.0x and latest IDP/ADP in ZLD2.0x?

The following are 3 major differences made from ZLD2.0x 2000:

#### **IDP-Inspects via. Signature**

An IDP system can detect malicious or suspicious packets and respond instantaneously. It is designed to detect pattern-based attacks.

The signature is designed for IDP in the purpose of detecting pattern-based attacks. If a packet matches a signature, the action specified by the signature is taken. You can change the default signature actions in the profile screens.

You can create custom signatures for new attacks or attacks peculiar to your network. Custom signatures can also be saved to/from your computer so as to share with others.

#### **ADP-Anomaly**

An ADP (Anomaly, Detection and Prevention) system can detect malicious or suspicious packets and respond instantaneously. It can detect:

- Anomalies based on violations of protocol standards.
- Abnormal flows such as port scans.

ADP on the ZyWALL protects against network-based intrusions. You can also create your own custom ADP rules.

#### **System Protection**

System Protection System offers the ZyWALL ability to protect itself against host-based intrusions. ZyXEL can prevent not only network intrusions but also host-based instructions.

#### Zone to Zone Protection

A zone is a combination of ZyWALL interfaces for security. Traffic direction is defined by the zone the traffic is coming from and the zone the traffic is going to. The ZyWALL can inspect the traffic from different sources. Therefore, the malicious/suspicious packets from WAN to LAN and the traffic coming from DMZ to

LAN will be treated differently.

#### J07. Does IDP subscription have anything to do with

#### **AppPatrol?**

AppPatrol can be free for usage if the user registers the IDP trial license firstly. Due to AppPatrol requires the IDP signatures to identify the application type, by registration to the trial program, the user can use AppPatrol as well to update signatures during the trial period. Once the trial license expires the user can still use the AppPatrol feature but is no longer able to update signatures. AppPatrol is independent from IDP, both features can be turned on or off independently.

IDP/ADP Comparison	IDP	ADP	System Protection
L7 Inspection to Stop Threats & Attacks	Yes	No	Yes
Signature Update	Yes	No	Yes
TA/PA	No	Yes	No
Protecting ZyWALL Itself	No	Yes	Yes
Requiring iCard Subscription	Yes	No	No
	TA: Traffic Anom PA: Protocol Ano	aly maly	

#### J08. How to get a detailed description of an IDP signature?

The detailed IDP signature description can be retrieved either by visiting MySecurityZone or by clicking the hyper link in the log.

#### J09. After an IDP signature updated, does it require ZyWALL to

#### reboot to make new signatures take effect?



No, it is not necessary to reboot the device to make new signatures take effect.

# **Content Filter FAQ**

K01. Why can't I enable external web filtering service? Why does the external web filtering service seem not to be working?

Enabling this feature requires the registration with myZyXEL.com and service license. If your service is expired, the feature would be disabled automatically.

#### K02. Why can't I use MSN after I enabled content filter and

#### allowed trusted websites only?

MSN messenger tends to access various websites for internal use and if it can't access these websites, the login fails. If allowing trusted websites only is enabled and the websites that MSN messenger wants to access are not in the trusted website, access would be blocked. If you really want this option enabled, you have to add these websites in the trusted websites list.

# L. Device HA FAQ

#### L01. What does the "Preempt" mean?

The "Preempt" means that the Backup with high priority can preempt the Backup with low priority when the Backup device is online. And Master can always preempt any Backup.

#### L02. What is the password in Synchronization?

If the Backup wants to synchronize the configuration from Master, both Master and Backup device must be set the same password.

#### L03. What is "Link Monitor" and how to enable it?

There is a new feature enhancement "Link Monitor" in ZLD 2.10 of USG. By enabling "Link Monitor" option, the ZyWALL monitors link status of direct-connected cables constantly. If a master ZyWALL device HA interface's link is down, the faulty device HA interface on master's router remains in status active and the rest of HA interface(s) on the master router will turn into fault. The purpose of this design is to prevent the backup router interface in the same HA group cannot detect the faulty event encountered on the master router.

You can click on Device HA from the left panel and check the "Enable" checkbox to enable "Monitored Interface."

Monitored Interface Configuration	
Enable Monitored Interface	
Interface Name	wan1
Virtual Router IP(VRIP) / Subnet Mask	167.35.4.3 / 255.255.255.0
Manage IP	
Subnet Mask	

#### L04. Can Link Monitor of Device HA be used in backup VRRP

#### interfaces?

No, the Link monitor is designed only for master device, if the master VRRP

interface's link is down, "Link Monitor" shuts down all of the master's VRRP interfaces except the failure interface so the backup ZyWALL takes over completely.

# L05. Why do both the VRRP interfaces of master ZW USG and

#### backup ZW USG are activated at the same time?

Since the ZWUSG master sends multicast VRRP announcement to backup ZWUSG periodically, if the backup ZWUSG doesn't receive the VRRP announcement, it will activate its VRRP interfaces.

For the application scenario if the VRRP interface of master and backup ZWUSG connect to a switch, the switch MUST forward the VRRP multicast to the backup ZWUSG. Otherwise the backup ZyWALL will never receive VRPT announcement. Please ensure the switch forwards the multicast VRRP announcement (224.0.0.18) by enabling the "Unkown multicast flodding" option in the switch setting.

# M. User Management FAQ

#### M01. What is the difference between user and guest account?

Both "user" and "guest" are accounts for network access. But the difference is that "user" account can login ZyWALL USG via telnet/SSH to view limited personal information.

#### M02. What is the "re-authentication time" and "lease time"?

For security reasons, administrators and accessing users are required to authenticate themselves after a period of time. The maximum session time is called re-authentication time. Lease time is another timeout mechanism to force access users to renew it manually (or automatically, it is configurable). For administrators, lease time is much like an idle time when configuring GUI.

#### M03. Why can't I sign in to the device?

There are several reasons that the device can deny the login for

- 1. Password is wrong
- 2. Service access policy violation
- 3. Too many simultaneous login session for an account
- 4. The IP address is locked out
- 5. System capacity reached

#### M04. Why is the TELNET/SSH/FTP session to the device

#### disconnected? Why is the GUI redirected to login page after I

#### click a button/link?

There are several reasons that device could log you out.

- 1. Re-authentication, lease or idle timeout
- 2. IP address is changed after authentication
- 3. Another account was used to login from the same computer

#### M05. What is AAA?

AAA stands for Authentication/Authorization/Accounting. AAA is a model for access

control and also a basis for user-aware device. A user-aware device like ZyWALL USG could use authentication method to authenticate a user (to prove who the user is) and give the user proper authority (defining what the user is allowed and not allowed to do) by authorization method. Accounting measures the resources a user consume during access which is used for authorization control, resources utilization and capacity planning activities.

AAA services are often provided by a dedicated AAA server or a local database in a user-aware device. The most common server interfaces are LDAP and RADIUS.

In ZyWALL USG, AAA object allows administrators to define the local database, AAA server(including LDAP server and RADIUS server) and related parameters. AAA groups are ones that could group several AAA servers for those enterprises that have more than one AAA server. Furthermore, if the three kinds of services, LDAP, RADIUS and Local exist at the same time, administrators could decide the order of different AAA services by AAA method.

#### M06. What are Idap-users and radius-users used for?

ldap-users/radius-users refer to the users that are authenticated successfully via LDAP/RADIUS server. If you want to perform access control rules or build access policies for the users authenticated via external servers such as LDAP or RADIUS, you can use the ldap-users and radius-users in your access control rules or policies.

#### M07. What privileges will be given for Idap-users and

#### radius-users?

When a user has been authenticated by external database (ladp or radius server), it will retrieve the user's attributes (like lease timeout and re-auth timeout value) from the external server. If the external server doesn't define the user's attributes, it will try to check local database on ZyWALL USG (at GUI menu **Configuration** > **User/Group** > **User** tab or **Group** tab) instead. If it still cannot find, it will use the attribute of "ldap-users" and "radius-users" at GUI menu **Configuration** > **User/Group** > **User** tab as below. The default lease time and re-authentication time of ldap-users and radius-users are 1440 minutes.



onfiguration			
#	User Name	Description	Ē
1	admin	Administration account	5
2	ldap-users	External LDAP Users	<b>B</b>
3	radius-users	External RADIUS Users	<b>F</b>

See the flow as shown below.



# **N. Centralized Log FAQ**

#### N01. Why can't I enable e-mail server in system log settings?

Enabling e-mail server requires necessary fields filled properly. You have to set the mail server, the sender address, event recipient and alert recipient.

#### N02. After I have the entire required field filled, why can't I

#### receive the log mail?

E-mail server may reject the event/alert mail delivering due to many reasons. Please enable system debug log and find out why the e-mail server refused to receive the mail.

# **O. Traffic Statistics FAQ**

#### O01. When I use "Flush Data" in Report, not all the statistic

#### data are cleared.

"Flush Data" means that it clears the statistic data for the specified interface, not all interfaces. If users want to clear all data, stop collection and start it again.

#### O02. Why isn't the statistic data of "Report" exact?

Report module utilizes limited memory to collect data. It means that the longer is the collecting duration or the more connections, the less exact the result the Report module has. This Report function is mainly used for troubleshooting, when a network problem happens.

#### O03. Does Report collect the traffic from/to ZyWALL itself?

In Report module, only the forwarding traffic will be recorded. The forwarding traffic means the traffic going through ZyWALL. Therefore, only the broadcast traffic in the bridge interface will be recorded.

#### O04. Why cannot I see the connections from/to ZyWALL itself?

In Session module, only the forwarding traffic will be listed The forwarding traffic means the traffic going through ZyWALL. Therefore, the broadcast traffic in the bridge interface will be listed.

# P. Anti-Virus FAQ

#### P01. Is there any file size or amount of concurrent files

#### limitation with ZyWALL USG Anti-Virus engine?

Due to ZyWALL USG Anti-Virus engine is a stream-based AV system, there is no strict limitations in file size or amount of concurrent files can be scanned.

#### P02. Does ZyWALL USG Anti-Virus support compressed file

#### scanning?

Yes, the ZyWALL USG Anti-Virus engine supports virus scanning with compression format ZIP, PKZIP, GZIP and RAR.

#### P03. What is the maximum concurrent session of ZyWALL

#### **USG Anti-Virus engine?**

Due to ZyWALL USG Anti-Virus engine is in stream-based; therefore, there is no limitations in concurrent session.

#### P04. How many type of viruses can be recognized by the

#### ZyWALL USG?

Anti-Virus engine can detect over 20000 common viruses, including worms and Trojans. The amount of virus can be detected is depend on amount of virus signature stored in the ZyWALL. In general, it covers the top 20000 active viruses in the wild list and the number of signatures on device is always at 3200.

#### P05. How frequent the AV signature will be updated?

The signature is powered by Kaspersky Labs. The signatures are updated 3 times a week. The emergency case will be responded within 48 hours.

#### P06. How to retrieve the virus information in detail?

Simply you can navigate to the web site with URL http://mysecurity.zyxel.com, and

search any virus relate detail as you required.

P07. I cannot download a file from Internet through ZyWALL USG because the Anti-Virus engine considers this file has been infected by the virus; however, I am very sure this file is not infected because the file is nothing but a plain text file. How do I resolve this problem?

You can add this file to the White List on ZyWALL USG to avoid this situation.

# P08. Does ZyWALL USG Anti-Virus engine support Passive FTP?

Yes, ZyWALL USG supports both Active FTP and Passive FTP.

#### P09. What kinds of protocol are currently supported on

#### ZyWALL USG Anti-Virus engine?

HTTP, FTP, SMTP, POP3 and IMAP4.

# P10. If the Anti-Virus engine detects a virus, what action it may

#### take? Can it cure the file?

The ZyWALL USG will destroy the infected file, log this event and send alert to system administrator. Anti-Virus

### Q. ZLD v2.20 New Feature Related FAQ

# Q01. In ZLD v2.20, by default, I don't need to create any policy route to make traffic from intranet to go out to internet. How does USG do this?

By default, there's a SYSTEM_DEFAULT_WAN_TRUNK. It includes all the interfaces whose type is External. You can find this default WAN Trunk in Network > Interface > Trunk.

Port Role Ethernet PPP Cellular WLAN	VLAN Bridge Auxiliary <b>Trunk</b>								
III Show Advanced Settings									
Configuration									
📝 Enable Link Sticking 🚺									
Timeout: 300 (30-600 sec	onds) 👔								
Default WAN Trunk									
Default Trunk Selection									
SYSTEM_DEFAULT_WAN_TRUNK									
O User Configured Trunk Please select one	*								
User Configuration									
💿 Add 📝 Edit 🍵 Remove 📑 Object Reference									
# Name	Algorithm								
▲ ▲ Page 1 of 1 ▶ ▶ Show 50 ∨ items									
System Default									
🕑 Edit 🛛 🔚 Object Reference									
# Name	Algorithm								
Name     SYSTEM_DEFAULT_WAN_TRUNK	Algorithm If								



Load	e: Balancing Algorithn	n:	Least Load First	
#	Member	Mode	Ingress Bandwidth	Egress Bandwidth
1	wan1	Active	1048576 kpbs	1048576 kpbs
2	wan2	Active	1048576 kpbs	1048576 kpbs
3	aux	Passive	56 kpbs	56 kpbs
4	wan1_ppp	Active	1048576 kpbs	1048576 kpbs
5	wan2_ppp	Active	1048576 kpbs	1048576 kpbs
6	opt_ppp	Active	1048576 kpbs	1048576 kpbs
14	↓ Page 1	of 1   ▶ ▶∥   Sh	items	Displaying 1 - 6 of 6

All the traffic received from Internal interfaces and destination to internet, will be sent out from the system default WAN Trunk.

User can also define customized WAN Trunk, and set the customized WAN Trunk as the system default WAN Trunk.

	O Add Trunk			
Jser Configuration           Image: Solution of the second	Name: Load Balancing Algorith	WA	N_trunk st Load First	
4	# Member	Mode	□ Ingress Bandwidth	Egress Bandwidth
iystem Default	1 wan1_ppp	Active	1048576 kpbs	1048576 kpbs
	2 wan2	Passive	1048576 kpbs	1048576 kpbs
#     Name       1     SYSTEM_DEFAULT_WAN       I     Page       I     of 1	A Page 1	of 1   🕨 🕨   Sh	50 v items	Displaying 1 - 2 of 2
fault WAN Trunk Default Trunk SelectionSYSTEM_DEFAULT_WAN_TRU	INK			
Output State St	WAN_trunk	*		

Q02. In ZLD v2.20, when I configure a NAT 1:1 mapping rule, there's not the option of "add corresponding policy route for NAT 1:1 mapping". Then how does the USG achieve the NAT 1:1 mapping?

# ZyXEL

In ZLD v2.20, after you configure an NAT 1:1 mapping rule, the system will automatically create a routing and NAT rule for the NAT 1:1 mapping of outgoing traffic. The system automatically created 1:1 routing and NAT rule for outgoing traffic has a lower priority than policy routes. So be careful when you create policy routes not to override the 1:1 rules.

#### Q03. In ZLD v2.20, do I still need to create policy routes for

#### **IPSec VPN traffic?**

No. In ZLD v2.20, after you set the IPSec VPN rule, system will automatically create corresponding routes for the IPSec VPN traffic according to their phase2 local/remote policy.

#### Q04. What is EPS?

EPS is short for Endpoint Security.

Endpoint refers to PCs, laptops, handhelds, etc. Endpoint Security is a security concept that assumes each endpoint is responsible for its own security. Network administrator can set restrict policies to allow only the endpoints that comply with its defined security requirements to access network resources. The endpoint security requirement items may contain current anti-virus state, personal firewall, and operating system patch level, etc.

For example, a local endpoint doesn't have any anti-virus software installed. If it surfs internet, there's a high risk that it may be infected with viruses. Then the viruses may be propagated among the entire local network.

Another example is in SSL VPN case. If the SSL VPN client doesn't have anti-virus software installed, when it accesses the HQ local resources through SSL VPN tunnel, it may propagate the virus to HQ local subnet.

To prevent such undesired situation, the network administrator can use EPS checking to restrict endpoints' network access privileges. Only the compliant endpoint can get authority to access certain network resources.

#### Q05. Where can I deploy the EPS function?

We can deploy EPS in User Aware and SSL VPN applications.

#### Q06. Is IPSec VPN HA fall back function in ZLD v2.20?

Yes, IPSec VPN HA Fall Back is a newly added function in ZLD v2.20. In IPSec VPN HA scenario, you can enable "Fall back to Primary Peer Gateway when possible", and set a fallback check interval in the range of 60s~86400s.

General Settings								
✓ Enable VPN Gateway Name:	to_HQ							
Gateway Settings								
My Address								
Interface	wan1		<ul> <li>DHCP client 172.25.27.35/255.255.255.0</li> </ul>					
🔘 Domain Name / IP	0.0.0.0							
Peer Gateway Address								
Static Address	Primary	202.0.0.1	1					
	Secondary	202.0.1.1	1					
📝 Fall back to Primary Peer Gateway when possible								
Fall Back Check Interval:	300		(60-86400 seconds)					
Dynamic Address								

When IPSec VPN fails over to the secondary gateway address, the Fallback checking mechanism is triggered. It will check whether the primary gateway is available once every check interval. If the USG detects that the primary gateway is available again, it will fall back to the primary gateway.

#### Q07. I want to add a bridge interface to Device HA. What are

#### the correct setup steps to prevent broadcast storm?

You can choose either of the following two suggested setup steps:

Setup strategy 1:

- 1. Make sure the bridge interfaces of the master USG and the backup USG are not connected.
- 2. Configure the bridge interface on the master USG, set the bridge interface as a monitored interface, and activate device HA.
- 3. Configure the bridge interface on the backup USG, set the bridge interface as a monitored interface, and activate device HA.
- 4. Connect the USG's.

Setup strategy 2:

- 1. Disable bridge interfaces on the two USG.
- 2. Connect the USG's according to topology.
- 3. Configure Device HA and add bridge interfaces into Device HA.
- 4. Activate Device HA.
- 5. Reactivate bridge interfaces.

# Q08. I upgraded my USG firmware from v2.12 to v2.20. There seem to be some routing issues after the upgrade. I know there're some changes in routing design in v2.20. How can I solve the routing issues related with firmware upgrade?

In previous firmware version, outing going traffic from local to internet, NAT 1:1 mapping, NAT Loopback and VPN site-to-site routings all need policy route to achieve. Please see the screenshot below as an example.

#	<mark>∆</mark> Us	ser 🛛	Schedule	Incoming	Source	Destination	Service	Next-Hop	SNAT	BWM	Ē
1	an)	У	none	any	any	VS_ADDR_192_168_2_6	any	auto	outgoing-interface	0	💡 💕 🖳 🗑 🕅
2	an)	y	none	any	LAN_SUBNET	subnet_branch	any	to_br	none	0	💡 💕 🖳 🗑 🕅
3	any	y.	none	any	VS_ADDR_192_168_2_6	any	any	ge2	VS_ADDR_172_25_27_241	0	💡 💕 🖳 🗑 🕅
4	an)	y.	none	ge5	DMZ2_SUBNET	any	any	WAN_Trunk	outgoing-interface	0	💡 💕 🖳 🗑 🕅
5	an)	γ.	none	ge4	DMZ1_SUBNET	any	any	WAN_Trunk	outgoing-interface	0	💡 💕 🔁 🛍 🕅
6	an)	у	none	ge1	LAN_SUBNET	any	any	WAN_Trunk	outgoing-interface	0	💡 💕 🖳 💼 🕅

After upgrading firmware version to v2.20, the policy routes configured in old firmware will be kept.

🔘 A	🕲 Add 📝 Edit 🍟 Remove 💡 Activate 😡 Inactivate 📣 Move											
# 🔺	Status	User	Schedule	Incoming	Source	Destination	DSCP Code	Service	Next-Hop	DSCP Marking	SNAT	BWM
1	9	any	none	any	any	<pre>NS_ADDR_19</pre>	any	any	auto	preserve	outgoing-interface	0
2	9	any	none	any	LAN_SUBNET	subnet_branc	any	any	to_br	preserve	none	0
3	9	any	none	any	<pre>NS_ADDR_192_18</pre>	any	any	any	■ge2	preserve	VS_ADDR_172_2	0
4	9	any	none	¤ge5	<pre>nDMZ2_SUBNET</pre>	any	any	any	■WAN_Trunk	preserve	outgoing-interface	0
5	9	any	none	¤ge4	<pre>ndmz1_SUBNET</pre>	any	any	any	<pre>NUMAN_Trunk</pre>	preserve	outgoing-interface	0
6	<b>@</b>	any	none	¤ge1	LAN_SUBNET	any	any	any	■VVAN_Trunk	preserve	outgoing-interface	0
14	I Page	1 of 1	.   🕨 🕅   Sho	ow 50 🗸 iten	15						Displa	ying 1 - 6 of

In v2.20, the routings of outgoing traffic from local to internet, NAT 1:1 mapping, NAT Loopback, and VPN site-to-site routing can all be done by system automatically created routes. And different routings and SNAT have the priority shown below:



If you want to add new IPSec VPN rules or new 1:1 NAT rules based on original configuration files, the system auto created routing rules for VPN traffic or 1:1 mapping rules will be overridden by the original policy routes according to the routing priority table.

IPsec VPN phase2 rule:

VPN Connection VPN Gateway Concentrator									
Global Setting									
🔽 U	Vise Policy Route to control dynamic IPSec rules								
Iç	nore "Don't Fragm	ent" setting in packet header 👔							
Configu	iration								
0	Add 📝 Edit 🍵	Remove 🥥 Activate 😡 Inacti	vate 😪 Connect 🛞 Disconnect 📴 Obje	ect Reference					
#	Status	Name	VPN Gateway	Encapsulation	Algorithm	Policy			
1	86	Default_L2TP_VPN_Connection	Default_L2TP_VPN_GW	TRANSPORT	3DES/SHA 3DES/MD5 DES/SHA	1			
2	💡 🛞	to_br	to_br	TUNNEL	DES/SHA	LAN_SUBNET/a subnet_branch			
3	9 🗞	to_br1	to_br1	TUNNEL	DES/SHA	LAN_SUBNET/q subnet_br1			
14	4 4   Page 1 of 1   ▶ ▶   Show 50 v Items								

#### 1:1 NAT rule:

💿 Add 📝 Edit 🃋 Remove 💡 Activate 😡 Inactivate										
#	# Status Name Mapping Type Interface Original IP Mapped IP Protocol Original Port Mapped Port									
1	0	dmz_svr	Virtual Server	∎ge2	172.25.27.241	192.168.2.6	any			
2	<b>@</b>	server2	1:1 NAT	∎ge2	172.25.27.249	192.168.1.33	any			
14	🔹   Page	1 of 1 🕨 🕅	Show 50 🗸 items						Displaying 1 - 2 of 2	

#### Policy routes:


0	Ͽ Add 📝 Edit 🁕 Remove 💡 Activate 🛞 Inactivate 📣 Move											
# 🔺	Status	User	Schedule	Incoming	Source	Destination	DSCP Code	Service	Next-Hop	DSCP Marking	SNAT	BVVM
1	<b>@</b>	any	none	any	any	<pre>■VS_ADDR_19</pre>	any	any	auto	preserve	outgoing-interface	0
2	0	any	none	any	LAN_SUBNET	subnet_branc	any	any	to_br	preserve	none	0
3	0	any	none	any	VS_ADDR_192_16	any	any	any	■ge2	preserve	VS_ADDR_172_2	0
4	0	any	none	∎ge5	DMZ2_SUBNET	any	апу	any	<pre>NAN_Trunk</pre>	preserve	outgoing-interface	0
5	<b>@</b>	апу	none	∎ge4	DMZ1_SUBNET	any	any	any	<pre>NUMBER IN THE INFORMATION INFORMATICA INTO INTO INTO INTO INTO INTO INTO INTO</pre>	preserve	outgoing-interface	0
6	<b>@</b>	any	none	¤ge1	LAN_SUBNET	any	any	any	<pre>NUMBER NUMBER NUMB</pre>	preserve	outgoing-interface	0
4												

To solve the routing issues, there're two ways:

Way 1 --- Keep the original policy routes, and add new policy routes for the newly added IPSec VPN rules.

🔘 Ac	🕲 Add 📝 Edit 🃋 Remove 💡 Activate 💡 Inactivate 📣 Move											
# 🔺	Status	User	Schedule	Incoming	Source	Destination	DSCP Code	Service	Next-Hop	DSCP Marking	SNAT	BVVM
1	<b>@</b>	any	none	any	LAN_SUBNET	subnet_br1	any	any	to_br1	preserve	none	0
2	<b>@</b>	any	none	any	any	VS_ADDR_19	any	any	auto	preserve	outgoing-interface	0
3	<b>@</b>	any	none	any	LAN_SUBNET	subnet_branc	any	any	to_br	preserve	none	0
4	<b>@</b>	any	none	any	■VS_ADDR_192_16	any	any	any	∎ge2	preserve	VS_ADDR_172_2	0
5	<b>@</b>	any	none	∎ge5	DMZ2_SUBNET	any	any	any	<pre><b>¤</b>VVAN_Trunk</pre>	preserve	outgoing-interface	0
6	<b>@</b>	any	none	∎ge4	DMZ1_SUBNET	any	any	any	<pre><b>¤</b>VVAN_Trunk</pre>	preserve	outgoing-interface	0
7	<b>@</b>	any	none	∎ge1	LAN_SUBNET	any	any	any	<pre>Participation = Participation = Participa</pre>	preserve	outgoing-interface	0
4 4	Page	1 of 1	Sho	w 50 🗸 item	s						Displa	aying 1 - 7 c

For 1:1 NAT mapping rules, there's a CLI can change the priority of policy route and 1:1 NAT rule.

[no] policy controll-virtual-server-rules activate

This function will be disabled automatically when the system detects the firmware is upgraded from v2.1x to v2.20.



So after firmware upgrade from v2.1x to v2.20, the routing priority table becomes below:



The newly added NAT 1:1 routing rules will always have higher priority than the policy routes. So it will not be overridden by any policy route.

Way2 --- Delete the policy routes for outgoing traffic from local to internet. Use default WAN Trunk and default SNAT for the outgoing traffic, and use the 2.20 default routing priority table.

Usually the policy routes that may override IPSec VPN routes and 1:1 NAT routes are the ones for outgoing traffic, since their source is local subnets/range, and destination is "Any".

Step1. After firmware upgrade from v2.1x to v2.20, the interfaces' types are all "general". They system default WAN Trunk includes all interfaces whose type is External. So after firmware upgrade, there's no interface in the system default WAN Trunk. We need to change the WAN interfaces' type to External, and change interfaces connected local subnet to Internal.

See the picture below as an example.

So we need to change ge1, ge4, ge5, ge6, ge7 Interface Type to Internal, and change ge2 and ge3 Interface Type to External.





Interface Type:	internal 🗸 👔	
Interface Name:	ge1	
Port:	P1	
Zone:	LAN	
MAC Address:	00:19:CB:9B:FA:5E	
Description:		(Optional)
terface Properties	evternal 🗸 🖪	
terface Properties	external 🗸 👔	
terface Properties Interface Type: Interface Name:	external v i	
t <mark>erface Properties</mark> Interface Type: Interface Name: Port:	external v i ge2 P2	
te <b>rface Properties</b> Interface Type: Interface Name: Port: Zone:	external v i ge2 P2 WAN v	
terface Properties Interface Type: Interface Name: Port: Zone: 1AC Address:	external v I ge2 P2 WAN v 00:19:CB:98:FA:5F	

Step2. Go to Configuration > Network > Interface > Trunk, check the SYSTEM_DEFAULT_WAN_TRUNK. All the external interfaces are included in it now.

Configuration							
🔽 Enable Link	🔵 Edit Sy	stem Default				? X	
Timeout:	Name	:		SYSTEM_DEFAULT_WAN_TRUNK	^		
Default WAN Tru	Load I	Balancing Algorithm:		Least Load First 💌			
Default Trunk		1					
SYSTEM	#	Member	Mode	Ingress Bandwidth	Egress Bandwidth		
🔘 User Co	1	aux	Passive	56 kpbs	56 kpbs		
0 000 00	2	ge1_ppp	Active	1048576 kpbs	1048576 kpbs	≡	
User Configurat	3	ge2_ppp	Active	1048576 kpbs	1048576 kpbs		
ober configurat	4	ge3_ppp	Active	1048576 kpbs	1048576 kpbs		
🔘 Add 📝 E	5	ge4_ppp	Active	1048576 kpbs	1048576 kpbs 1048576 kpbs		
# Name	6	ge5_ppp	Active	1048576 kpbs			
1 WAN TO	7	ge6_ppp	Active	1048576 kpbs	1048576 kpbs		
Id d Page	8	ge7_ppp	Active	1048576 kpbs	1048576 kpbs		
	9	ge2	Active	1048576 kpbs	1048576 kpbs		
System Default	10	ge3	Active	1048576 kpbs	1048576 kpbs		
📝 Edit 🔚 Obj					OK Car		
# Name			-	Algorithm			
1 SYSTEM_D	DEFAULT_	WAN_TRUNK		llf			
🛛 🗐 🖣 Page 🗄	1 of 1		0 🗸 items				

Step3. Go to Configuration > Network > Routing > Policy Route, delete the original policy routes that were used to route outgoing traffic.

Polic	Policy Route RIP OSPF													
III Sho	Show Advanced Settings													
RWM	BWM Global Setting													
	Shir rabba Secting													
V Enable BWM														
Conf	Configuration													
C	Add 🤇	Z Ec	lit 🔟 Re	emove 💡 Activ	vate 🜚 Inactiva	ate 📣 Move								
#	<ul> <li>Sta</li> </ul>	atus	User	Schedule	Incoming	Source	Destination	DSCP Code	Service	Next-Hop	DSCP Marking	SNAT	BWM	
1	9	)	any	none	any	any	VS_ADDR_19	any	any	auto	preserve	outgoing-interface	0	
2	9	)	any	none	any	LAN_SUBNET	subnet_branc	any	any	to_br	preserve	none	Delete	
3	3 🤤 any none any <u>«VS_ADDR_192_16</u> any any any <u>«ge2</u> preserve <u>«VS_ADDR_172_26</u> /													
4	4 🤤 any none age5 aDMZ2_SUBNET any any avv. Avv.AN_trunk preserve outgoing-interface 0													
5	9	)	any	none	∎ge4	DMZ1_SUBNET	any	any	any	<pre>NVAN_Trunk</pre>	preserve	outgoing-interface	0	
6	9	2	any	none	■ge1	LAN_SUBNET	any	any	any	<pre>eVVAN_Trunk</pre>	preserve	outgoing-interface	0	
ŀ	↓ ↓   Page 1 of 1 → →    Show 50 v Items Displaying 1 - 6 of 6													

Step4. Use the CLI below to change routing priority of NAT 1:1 rule and policy route, making policy route have higher priority than NAT 1:1 route.

```
Router(config)# policy controll-virtual-server-rules activate
Router(config)#
```

Check the policy route over NAT 1:1 routing status:

Router# show policy-route controll-virtual-server-rules policy route control virtual server status: on Router#

After all these configuration changes, your USG now totally follow the v2.20 new routing and SNAT priority design. You can leave all the routing tasks of outgoing traffic from local to internet, NAT 1:1 mapping, NAT Loopback, and VPN site-to-site to the system automatically generated routes.

